ISSN 2319-3786 VOLUME 9, ISSUE 4, OCTOBER 2021

M J M





5, Venus Garden, Sappanimadai Road, Karunya Nagar (Post), Coimbatore- 641114, Tamil Nadu, India.

www.mkdpress.com | www.malayajournal.org

Editorial Team

Editors-in-Chief

Prof. Dr. Eduardo Hernandez Morales

Departamento de computacao e matematica, Faculdade de Filosofia, Universidade de Sao Paulo, Brazil.

Prof. Dr. Yong-Kui Chang

School of Mathematics and Statistics, Xidian University, Xi'an 710071, P. R. China.

Prof. Dr. Mostefa NADIR

Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Mathematics and Informatics, University of Msila 28000 ALGERIA.

Associate Editors

Prof. Dr. M. Benchohra

Departement de Mathematiques, Universite de Sidi Bel Abbes, BP 89, 22000 Sidi Bel Abbes, Algerie.

Prof. Dr. Tomas Caraballo

Departamento de Ecuaciones Diferenciales y Análisis Numérico, Facultad de Matemáticas, Universidad de Sevilla, C/Tarfia s/n, 41012 Sevilla, Spain.

Prof. Dr. Sergei Trofimchuk

Instituto de Matematicas, Universidad de Talca, Casilla 747, Talca, Chile.

Prof. Dr. Martin Bohner

Missouri S&T, Rolla, MO, 65409, USA.

Prof. Dr. Michal Feckan

Departments of Mathematical Analysis and Numerical Mathematics, Comenius University, Mlynska dolina, 842 48 Bratislava, Slovakia.

Prof. Dr. Zoubir Dahmani

Laboratory of Pure and Applied Mathematics, LPAM, Faculty SEI, UMAB University of Mostaganem, Algeria.

Prof. Dr. Bapurao C. Dhage

Kasubai, Gurukul Colony, Ahmedpur- 413 515, Dist. Latur Maharashtra, India.

Prof. Dr. Dumitru Baleanu

Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Arts and Sciences, Cankaya University, 06530 Ankara: Turkey and Institute of Space Sciences, Magurele-Bucharest, Romania.

Editorial Board Members

Prof. Dr. J. Vasundhara Devi

Department of Mathematics and GVP - Prof. V. Lakshmikantham Institute for Advanced Studies,

GVP College of Engineering, Madhurawada, Visakhapatnam 530 048, India.

Manil T. Mohan

Department of Mathematics, Indian Institute of Technology Roorkee, Roorkee-247667, Uttarakhand, India.

Prof. Dr. Alexander A. Katz

Department of Mathematics & Computer Science, St. John's College of Liberal Arts and Sciences, St. John's University, 8000 Utopia Parkway, St. John's Hall 334-G, Queens, NY 11439.

Prof. Dr. Ahmed M. A. El-Sayed

Faculty of Science, Alexandria University, Alexandria, Egypt.

Prof. Dr. G. M. N'Guerekata

Department of Mathematics, Morgan State University, 1700 E. Cold Spring Lane, Baltimore, MD 21251, USA.

Prof. Dr. Yong Ren

Department of Mathematics, Anhui Normal University, Wuhu 241000 Anhui Province, China.

Prof. Dr. Moharram Ali Khan

Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science and Arts, Khulais King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.

Prof. Dr. Yusuf Pandir

Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Arts and Science, Bozok University, 66100 Yozgat, Turkey.

Dr. V. Kavitha

Department of Mathematics, Karunya University, Coimbatore-641114, Tamil Nadu, India.

Dr. OZGUR EGE

Faculty of Science, Department of Mathematics, Ege University, Bornova, 35100 Izmir, Turkey.

Dr. Vishnu Narayan Mishra

Department of Mathematics, Indira Gandhi National Tribal University, Lalpur, Amarkantak, Anuppur, Madhya Pradesh 484 887, India.

Dr. Michelle Pierri

Departamento de computacao e matematica, Faculdade de Filosofia, Universidade de Sao Paulo, Brazil.

Dr. Devendra Kumar

Department of Mathematics, JECRC University, Jaipur-303905, Rajasthan, India.

Publishing Editors

Dr. M. Mallikaarjunan

Department of Mathematics, School of Arts, Science and Humanities, SASTRA Deemed to be University, Thanjavur-613401, Tamil Nadu, India.

Dr. Pratap Anbalagan

School of Information and Control Engineering, Kunsan National University, Gunsan-si, Jeonbuk, The Republic of Korea.

The Malaya Journal of Matematik is published quarterly in single volume annually and four issues constitute one volume appearing in the months of January, April, July and October.

Subscription

The subscription fee is as follows:

USD 350.00 For USA and Canada

Euro 190.00 For rest of the world

Rs. 4000.00 In India. (For Indian Institutions in India only)

Prices are inclusive of handling and postage; and issues will be delivered by Registered Air-Mail for subscribers outside India.

Subscription Order

Subscription orders should be sent along with payment by Cheque/ D.D. favoring "Malaya Journal of Matematik" payable at COIMBATORE at the following address:

MKD Publishing House

5, Venus Garden, Sappanimadai Road, Karunya Nagar (Post),

Coimbatore- 641114, Tamil Nadu, India.

Contact No. : +91-9585408402

E-mail : info@mkdpress.com; editorinchief@malayajournal.org; publishingeditor@malayajournal.org

Website : https://mkdpress.com/index.php/index/index

Vol. 9 No. 04 (2021): Malaya Journal of Matematik (MJM)

1.	Existence and monotonicity of positive solutions for hybrid Caputo-Hadamard integro-differential equations	<u>fractional</u>
	Abdelouaheb Ardjouni, Moussa Haoues	168-180
2.	On rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space	
	Gülşah AYDIN ŞEKERCİ, Sibel SEVİNÇ, Abdilkadir Ceylan ÇÖKEN	181-193
3.	Disjunctive total domination in some tree networks	
	Vecdi Aytaç, Tufan Turacı	194-205
4.	Application of Simpson's method for solving singular Volterra integral equation	
	Mustapha YAHAYA, Sirajo Lawan BICHI	206-215
5.	(e)-convergence for double sequences	
	Ulaş Yamancı	216-221
6.	Common fixed point theorem satisfying rational contraction in complex valued dislometric space	ocated
	J. Uma Maheswari, A.Anbarasan, Lakshmi Narayan Mishra, Vishnu Narayan Mishra	a 222-227
7.	On solutions of the Diophantine equation $L_n+L_m=3^a$	
	Pagdame Tiebekabe, Ismaïla Diouf	228-238
8.	A characterization of involutes of a given curve in E ³ via directional q-frame	
	Munevver Yildirim Yilmaz, Esra Erdem	239-250
9.	Nadaraya-Watson estimation of a nonparametric autoregressive model	
	Ben Célestin Kouassi, Ouagnina Hili, Edoh Katchekpele	251-258

MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK

Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 168–180. http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/001

Existence and monotonicity of positive solutions for hybrid Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equations

ABDELOUAHEB ARDJOUNI^{*1} AND MOUSSA HAOUES²

¹ Department of Mathematics and Informatics, University of Souk Ahras, P.O. Box 1553, Souk Ahras, 41000, Algeria.
 ² Laboratory of Informatics and Mathematics, Department of Mathematics and Informatics, University of Souk-Ahras, P.O. Box 1553, Souk-Ahras, 41000, Algeria.

Received 08 August 2021; Accepted 27 September 2021

Abstract. The purpose of this paper is to present new results on the existence, uniqueness and monotonicity of positive solutions for hybrid Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equations. Our results are based on the method of upper and lower solutions, and the Dhage and Banach fixed point theorems. Two examples are given to illustrate our obtained results.

AMS Subject Classifications: 40A05, 40A99, 46A70, 46A99.

Keywords: Fractional integro-differential equations, fixed point theorems, existence, positivity, monotonicity.

Contents

1	Introduction	168
2	Preliminaries	169
3	Existence of positive solutions	170
4	Uniqueness of positive solutions	176
5	Monotonicity of positive solutions	176
6	Examples	178
7	Conclusion	179

1. Introduction

Fractional differential equations with and without delay arise from a variety of applications including in various fields of science and engineering such as applied sciences, physics, chemistry, biology, medicine, etc. In particular, problems concerning qualitative analysis of fractional differential equations with and without delay have received the attention of many authors, see [1]–[14], [16]–[22] and the references therein.

Hybrid Fractional differential equations arise from a variety of different areas of applied mathematics and physics, e.g., in the deflection of a curved beam having a constant or varying cross section, a three-layer beam, electromagnetic waves or gravity driven flows and so on [2, 3, 13, 14, 21, 22].

^{*}Corresponding author. Email address: abd_ardjouni@yahoo.fr (Abdelouaheb Ardjouni), moussakoussa84@yahoo.fr (Moussa Haoues)

Hybrid Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equations

Let $J = [t_0, T]$. Haoues et al. [18] investigated the existence, uniqueness and monotonicity of positive solutions for the following hybrid fractional integro-differential equation

$$\begin{cases} {}^{C}D_{t_{0}}^{\alpha}\left(\frac{x\left(t\right)}{p\left(t\right)+\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(t-s\right)^{\beta-1}g\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)ds}\right)=f\left(t,x\left(t\right)\right),\ t\in J,\\ x\left(t_{0}\right)=p\left(t_{0}\right)\theta\geq0, \end{cases}$$

where ${}^{C}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}$ is the Caputo fractional derivative of order $0 < \alpha \le 1, 0 < \beta \le 1, 0 \le t_0 < T, f, g : J \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ and $p : J \to \mathbb{R}$ are given continuous functions. By using the method of the upper and lower solutions and the Dhage and Banach fixed point theorems, the authors obtained the existence, uniqueness and monotonicity of a positive solution.

In this paper, we extend the results in [18] by proving the existence, uniqueness and monotonicity of positive solutions for the following hybrid nonlinear Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equation

$$\begin{cases} {}^{CH}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \left(\frac{x\left(t\right)}{p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta - 1} g\left(s, x\left(s\right)\right) \frac{ds}{s}} \right) = f\left(t, x\left(t\right)\right), \ t \in J, \\ x\left(t_0\right) = p\left(t_0\right) \theta \ge 0, \end{cases}$$
(1.1)

where ${}^{CH}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}$ is the Caputo-Hadamard fractional derivative of order $0 < \alpha \leq 1, 0 < \beta \leq 1, 1 \leq t_0 < T$, $f, g: J \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ and $p: J \to \mathbb{R}$ are given continuous functions. To prove the existence, uniqueness and monotonicity of positive solutions, we transform (1.1) into an integral equation and then by the method of upper and lower solutions and use Dhage and Banach fixed point theorems.

2. Preliminaries

Let X = C(J) be the Banach space of all real-valued continuous functions defined on the compact interval J, endowed with the maximum norm. Define the subset $C_{\theta} = \{x \in X : x(t) \ge p(t_0) \theta, t \in J\}$ of X.

Definition 2.1 ([19]). The Hadamard fractional integral of order $\alpha > 0$ for a continuous function $x : [t_0, +\infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is defined as

$${}^{H}I_{t_{0}}^{\alpha}x\left(t\right) = \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}x\left(s\right)\frac{ds}{s}.$$

Definition 2.2 ([19]). The Caputo-Hadamard fractional derivative of order $\alpha > 0$ for a continuous function $x : [t_0, +\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ is defined as

$${}^{CH}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}x\left(t\right) = \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(n-\alpha\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{n-\alpha-1} \delta^n\left(x\right)\left(s\right) \frac{ds}{s},$$

where $\delta^n = \left(t\frac{d}{dt}\right)^n$ and $n = [\alpha] + 1$.

Lemma 2.3 ([19]). Let $\alpha > 0$ and $x \in C^{n-1}[t_0, +\infty)$ and $\delta^n(x)$ exists almost everywhere on any bounded interval of $[t_0, +\infty)$. Then

$$\left({}^{H}I_{t_{0}}^{\alpha CH}D_{t_{0}}^{\alpha}x\right)(t) = x(t) - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{x^{(k)}(t_{0})}{k!} \left(\log t\right)^{k}.$$

In particular, when $0 < \alpha \leq 1$, $\left({}^{H}I^{\alpha CH}_{t_{0}}D^{\alpha}_{t_{0}}x\right)(t) = x(t) - x(t_{0}).$



A. Ardjouni and M. Haoues

Definition 2.4. For any $x \in [a, b] \subset \mathbb{R}^+$, we define the upper-control function by

$$U(t,x) = \sup \left\{ f(t,s) : a \le s \le x \right\},\$$

and the lower-control function by

$$L(t, x) = \inf \left\{ f(t, s) : x \le s \le b \right\}.$$

It is obvious that these functions are non-decreasing on [a, b], i.e.

$$L(t,x) \le f(t,x) \le U(t,x), \ t \in J.$$

Definition 2.5. A function $x \in X$ is positive bounded below if $x \in C_{\theta}$. In particular, we call x as nonnegative function if $p(t_0) \theta = 0$ and positive function if $p(t_0) \theta > 0$.

The following fixed point theorem due to Dhage [15] is essential tool for the proof of the first result.

Theorem 2.6 ([15]). Let S be a nonempty bounded closed convex subset of a Banach algebra X. Let $\mathcal{B} : S \to X$ and $\mathcal{A} : S \to X$ be two operators such that

i) A is Lipschiz with a Lipschitz constant σ ,

ii) \mathcal{B} *is completely continuous,*

iii) $AxBy \in S$ for all $x, y \in S$.

Then the product operator equation

$$4x\mathcal{B}x = x,$$

has a solution, whenever $\sigma M < 1$, where $M = \sup \{ \|\mathcal{B}x\| : x \in S \}$.

3. Existence of positive solutions

In this section, we will discuss the existence of positive solutions for (1.1). We introduce the following conditions

(H1) For $t \in J$ and $x \in X$, we have

$$p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} g(s, x(s)) \frac{ds}{s} > 0,$$

and

$$\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha - 1} f(s, x(s)) \frac{ds}{s} \ge 0.$$

(H2) Let $x^*, x_* \in C_{\theta}$, such that $x_*(t_0) = x^*(t_0) = p(t_0)\theta$ and $p(t_0)\theta \leq x_*(t) \leq x^*(t) \leq b, t \in J$. Moreover,

$$\begin{cases} {}^{CH}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \left(\frac{x^*(t)}{p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta - 1} g(s, x^*(s)) \frac{ds}{s}} \right) \ge U(t, x^*(t)), \\ {}^{CH}D_{t_0}^{\alpha} \left(\frac{x_*(t)}{p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta - 1} g(s, x_*(s)) \frac{ds}{s}} \right) \le L(t, x_*(t)), \end{cases}$$
(3.1)

for any $t \in J$.

(H3) Let g be monotonic non-decreasing with respect to x and there exists $L_g > 0$ such that

$$\left|g\left(t,x\right) - g\left(t,y\right)\right| \le L_{g}\left|x - y\right|, \ t \in J, \ x, y \in \mathbb{R},$$



Hybrid Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equations

where

$$0 < L_g \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)} \left(|\theta| + \frac{c_f \left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)} \right) < 1.$$

(H4) There exists $L_f > 0$ such that

$$|f(t,x) - f(t,y)| \le L_f |x - y|, \ t \in J, \ x, y \in \mathbb{R}.$$

The functions x^* and x_* are respectively called the pair of upper and lower solutions for (1.1). From Lemma 2.3, we deduce the following lemma.

Lemma 3.1. Suppose that $\frac{x}{h}$ is differentiable on J. Then the equation

$$\begin{cases} {}^{CH}D^{\alpha}_{t_0}\left(\frac{x\left(t\right)}{h\left(t\right)}\right) = f\left(t, x\left(t\right)\right), \ t \in J, \\ x\left(t_0\right) = p\left(t_0\right)\theta, \end{cases} \tag{3.2}$$

is equivalent to

$$x(t) = h(t)\left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)}\int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} f(s, x(s))\frac{ds}{s}\right), \ t \in J.$$
(3.3)

By the previous lemma, (1.1) is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} x\left(t\right) &= \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} g\left(s, x\left(s\right)\right) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &\times \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} f\left(s, x\left(s\right)\right) \frac{ds}{s}\right), \ t \in J. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, according to the Dhage fixed point theorem 2.6, we define the operators $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}: \mathcal{C}_{\theta} \to \mathcal{C}_{\theta}$ by

$$\left(\mathcal{A}x\right)(t) = p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} g\left(s, x\left(s\right)\right) \frac{ds}{s},\tag{3.4}$$

and

$$\left(\mathcal{B}x\right)\left(t\right) = \theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} f\left(s, x\left(s\right)\right) \frac{ds}{s},\tag{3.5}$$

for $t \in J$.

Theorem 3.2. Suppose that $(\mathbf{H1}) - (\mathbf{H3})$ are satisfied, then the problem (1.1) has at last one positive bounded below solution $x \in C_{\theta}$ satisfying $x_*(t) \le x(t) \le x^*(t)$, $t \in J$.

Proof. Let $S = \{x \in C_{\theta} : x_*(t) \le x(t) \le x^*(t), t \in J\}$, endowed with the norm $||x|| = \max_{t \in J} |x(t)|$, then for any $x \in S$, we have $||x|| \le b$. Hence, S is a convex, bounded and closed subset of C_{θ} . Moreover, the continuity of g and f implies the continuity of the operators A and B on S. Now, if $x \in S$ there exists a positive



A. Ardjouni and M. Haoues

constant c_{f} such that $\max \{ |f(t, x(t))| : (t, x) \in J \times S \} \le c_{f}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} |(\mathcal{B}x)(t)| &= \left| \theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} f(s, x(s)) \frac{ds}{s} \right| \\ &\leq |\theta| + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} |f(s, x(s))| \frac{ds}{s} \\ &\leq |\theta| + \frac{c_f}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} \frac{ds}{s} \\ &\leq |\theta| + \frac{c_f \left(\log \frac{t}{t_0} \right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(\alpha + 1)}. \end{aligned}$$

So,

$$\|\mathcal{B}x\| \le |\theta| + \frac{c_f \left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(\alpha+1)}.$$

Hence, $\mathcal{B}(S)$ is uniformly bounded. Next, we show the equicontinuity of \mathcal{B} . Let $x \in S$, then for any $t_1, t_2 \in J$, $t_2 > t_1$, we get

$$\begin{split} |(\mathcal{B}x)\left(t_{2}\right)-\left(\mathcal{B}x\right)\left(t_{1}\right)|\\ &=\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\left|\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{2}}\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}f\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}-\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}}\left(\log\frac{t_{1}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}f\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right)\\ &\leq\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}}\left(\left(\log\frac{t_{1}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}-\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}\right)|f\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)|\frac{ds}{s}\\ &+\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}}\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}|f\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)|\frac{ds}{s}\\ &\leq\frac{c_{f}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\left(\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}}\left(\log\frac{t_{1}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}-\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}\frac{ds}{s}+\int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}}\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}\frac{ds}{s}\right)\\ &\leq\frac{c_{f}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)}\left(\left(\log\frac{t_{1}}{t_{0}}\right)^{\alpha}-\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{t_{0}}\right)^{\alpha}+2\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{t_{1}}\right)^{\alpha}\right)\\ &\leq\frac{2c_{f}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)}\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{t_{1}}\right)^{\alpha}. \end{split}$$

As $t_1 \to t_2$ the right-hand side of the previous inequality is independent of x and tends to zero. Therefore, $\mathcal{B}(S)$ is equicontinuous. The Arzela-Ascoli theorem implies that \mathcal{B} is compact. Hence \mathcal{B} is completely continuous.



Hybrid Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equations

By hypothesis (H3), for any $x, y \in S$, we get

$$\begin{split} |(\mathcal{A}x)(t) - (\mathcal{A}y)(t)| \\ &= \left| \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s} \right)^{\beta-1} g\left(s, x\left(s \right) \right) \frac{ds}{s} - \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s} \right)^{\beta-1} g\left(s, y\left(s \right) \right) \frac{ds}{s} \right| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s} \right)^{\beta-1} |g\left(s, x\left(s \right) \right) - g\left(s, y\left(s \right) \right)| \frac{ds}{s} \\ &\leq \frac{L_g}{\Gamma(\beta)} \left(\int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s} \right)^{\beta-1} \frac{ds}{s} \right) ||x - y|| \\ &\leq \frac{L_g \left(\log \frac{T}{t_0} \right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma(\beta+1)} ||x - y|| \,. \end{split}$$

Then \mathcal{A} is Lipschiz mapping with Lipschitz constant $\sigma = L_g \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma(\beta+1)}$, that satisfying $\sigma \sup \{ \|\mathcal{B}x\| : x \in S \} < 1$.

We need to show that $AxBy \in S$ for all $x, y \in S$. Indeed, by Definition 2.4 and the hypothesis (H3), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\mathcal{A}x\right)\left(t\right)\left(\mathcal{B}y\right)\left(t\right) \\ &= \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}g\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right)\left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}f\left(s,y\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &\leq \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}g\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right)\left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}U\left(s,y\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &\leq \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}g\left(s,x^{*}\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right)\left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}U\left(s,x^{*}\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &\leq x^{*}\left(t\right), \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\mathcal{A}x\right)\left(t\right)\left(\mathcal{B}y\right)\left(t\right) \\ &\geq \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}g\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right)\left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}L\left(s,y\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &\geq \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}g\left(s,x_{*}\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right)\left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}L\left(s,x_{*}\left(s\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &\geq x_{*}\left(t\right). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, $x_*(t) \leq Ax(t) By(t) \leq x^*(t), t \in J$, that is $(AxBy)(S) \subseteq S$. According to the Dhage fixed point theorem, the operator equation AxBx = x has at last one fixed point $x \in S$. Therefore, the problem (1.1) has at last one positive bounded below solution $x \in C_{\theta}$.

Next, we consider many particular cases of the previous theorem.

Corollary 3.3. Suppose that (H3) holds and there exist $k_1, k_2, k_3, k_4 \in X$, such that

$$k_1(t) \le g(t, x(t)) \le k_2(t),$$
(3.6)

A. Ardjouni and M. Haoues

and

$$k_{3}(t) \leq f(t, x(t)) \leq k_{4}(t).$$
 (3.7)

If

$$p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_1(s) \frac{ds}{s} > 0,$$
(3.8)

and

$$\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log \frac{t}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} k_3(s) \frac{ds}{s} \ge 0, \tag{3.9}$$

then the problem (1.1) has at least one positive bounded below solution. Moreover

$$\begin{pmatrix} p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_1(s) \frac{ds}{s} \end{pmatrix} \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} k_3(s) \frac{ds}{s} \right)$$

$$\leq x(t)$$

$$\leq \left(p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_2(s) \frac{ds}{s} \right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} k_4(s) \frac{ds}{s} \right).$$

Proof. By the assumption (3.7) and the definition of control functions, we have

$$k_{3}(t) \leq L(t, x(t)) \leq U(t, x(t)) \leq k_{4}(t),$$

for any $t \in J$. Now, we consider the fractional differential equations

$${}^{CH}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}\left(\frac{x\left(t\right)}{p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)}\int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}k_1\left(s\right)\frac{ds}{s}}\right) = k_3\left(t\right), \ x\left(t_0\right) = p\left(t_0\right)\theta,\tag{3.10}$$

and

$${}^{CH}D_{t_0}^{\alpha}\left(\frac{x\left(t\right)}{p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)}\int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}k_2\left(s\right)\frac{ds}{s}}\right) = k_4\left(t\right), \ x\left(t_0\right) = p\left(t_0\right)\theta.$$
(3.11)

In accordance of Lemma 3.1, the solutions of (3.10) and (3.11) are given respectively by

$$x(t) = \left(p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_1(s) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} k_3(s) \frac{ds}{s}\right),$$

and

$$x(t) = \left(p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_2(s) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} k_4(s) \frac{ds}{s}\right)$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} x\left(t\right) &= \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_1\left(s\right) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} k_3\left(s\right) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &\leq \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_1\left(s\right) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} L\left(s, x\left(s\right)\right) \frac{ds}{s}\right), \end{aligned}$$

Hybrid Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equations

and

$$x(t) = \left(p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_2(s) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} k_4(s) \frac{ds}{s}\right)$$
$$\geq \left(p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_2(s) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} U(s, x(s)) \frac{ds}{s}\right)$$

One can define the upper and lower solutions as

$$x^{*}(t) = \left(p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_{0}}^{t} \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_{2}(s) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_{0}}^{t} \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} U(s, x^{*}(s)) \frac{ds}{s}\right),$$

and

$$x_*\left(t\right) = \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_1\left(s\right) \frac{ds}{s}\right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} L\left(s, x_*\left(s\right)\right) \frac{ds}{s}\right).$$

Hence by Theorem 3.2, the problem (1.1) has a positive bounded below solution $x \in C_{\theta}$.

Corollary 3.4. Let $k \in X$ and $\varphi \in \mathbb{R}_+$ such that $\varphi < k(t) = \lim_{x \to \infty} f(t, x) < \infty$ for $t \in J$. If (H3), (3.6) and (3.8) hold and $\theta \in \mathbb{R}_+$, then the problem (1.1) has at least one positive bounded below solution. Moreover for $0 < \omega < \varphi$,

$$\begin{pmatrix} p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_1(s) \frac{ds}{s} \end{pmatrix} \left(\theta + \frac{(\varphi - \omega) \left(\log\frac{t}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(\alpha + 1)} \right)$$

$$\leq x(t)$$

$$\leq \left(p(t) + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\beta)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_2(s) \frac{ds}{s} \right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} k(s) \frac{ds}{s} + \frac{\omega \left(\log\frac{t}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(\alpha + 1)} \right).$$

Corollary 3.5. Suppose that (H3), (3.6) and (3.8) hold, and

$$\lim_{x \to \theta} \frac{f\left(t,x\right)}{x} = \gamma\left(t\right),$$

where $\gamma \in X$, $t \in J$. Then there exists a positive bounded below solution of the problem (1.1).

Corollary 3.6. Let μ , ν and ξ are real positive numbers such that $\mu \leq f(t, x(t)) \leq \nu x(t) + \xi$, for $t \in J$. If (3.6), (3.8) and (H3) hold and $\theta \in \mathbb{R}_+$, then the problem (1.1) has at least one positive bounded below solution. Moreover

$$\left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_1\left(s\right) \frac{ds}{s} \right) \left(\theta + \frac{\mu\left(\log\frac{t}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)} \right)$$

$$\leq x\left(t\right)$$

$$\leq \left(p\left(t\right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} k_2\left(s\right) \frac{ds}{s} \right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)} \int_{t_0}^t \left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} \left(\nu x\left(s\right) + \xi\right) \frac{ds}{s} \right).$$

A. Ardjouni and M. Haoues

4. Uniqueness of positive solutions

In this portion, we will prove the uniqueness of the bounded below positive solution of (1.1) using the Banach contraction mapping principle.

Theorem 4.1. Suppose that (H1) - (H4) hold. If

$$L_g \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)} \left(\theta + c_f \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)}\right) + \left(p_m + c_g \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)}\right) L_f \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)} < 1,$$
(4.1)

then the problem (1.1) has a unique positive bounded below solution.

Proof. Let c_f and c_g are positive real numbers such that,

$$|f(t, x(t))| \le c_f, |g(t, x(t))| \le c_g,$$

for any $t \in J$ and $x, y \in C_{\theta}$. According to Theorem 3.2, the problem (1.1) has at least one positive bounded below solution in S. Now, we need only to prove that the product operator AxBx is a contraction mapping on X, where A and B are defined as in (3.4) and (3.5). Indeed, for any $x, y \in C_{\theta}$ and $t \in J$, we get

$$\begin{split} &|(\mathcal{A}x\mathcal{B}x)\left(t\right) - (\mathcal{A}y\mathcal{B}y)\left(t\right)|\\ &\leq \left(\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}|g\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right) - g\left(s,y\left(s\right)\right)|\frac{ds}{s}\right)\left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}|f\left(s,x\left(s\right)\right)|\frac{ds}{s}\right)\right)\\ &+ \left(|p\left(t\right)| + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}|g\left(s,y\left(s\right)\right)|\frac{ds}{s}\right)\right)\\ &\times \left(\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}|f\left(s,x\left(x\right)\right) - f\left(s,y\left(s\right)\right)|\frac{ds}{s}\right)\right)\\ &\leq \left(L_{g}\frac{\left(\log\frac{t}{t_{0}}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)}\|x - y\|\right)\left(\theta + c_{f}\frac{\left(\log\frac{t}{t_{0}}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)}\right)\\ &+ \left(|p\left(t\right)| + c_{g}\frac{\left(\log\frac{t}{t_{0}}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)}\right)\left(L_{f}\frac{\left(\log\frac{t}{t_{0}}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)}\right) + \left(p_{m} + c_{g}\frac{\left(\log\frac{T}{t_{0}}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)}\right)L_{f}\frac{\left(\log\frac{T}{t_{0}}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)}\right)\|x - y\|, \end{split}$$

where $p_m = \max_{t \in J} |p(t)|$. Hence, by (4.1) the product operator $\mathcal{A}x\mathcal{B}x$ is a contraction mapping. Therefore, the problem (1.1) has a unique positive bounded below solution $x \in C_{\theta}$.

5. Monotonicity of positive solutions

Theorem 5.1. Let p, g and f be non-decreasing functions with respect to both variables, $f(t_0, x(t_0)) \ge 0$ and $g(t_0, x(t_0)) \ge 0$. Moreover, let $(\mathbf{H1}) - (\mathbf{H4})$ hold, then there is a monotonic non-decreasing positive bounded below solution of the problem (1.1).



Hybrid Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equations

Proof. Define a subset $R = \{x \in S : x \text{ is nondecreasing on } J\}$, then R is a closed and convex subset of S. The operator \mathcal{B} is uniformly bounded and completely continuous and the operator \mathcal{A} is Lipschitzian with Lipschitz constant σ , and satisfying $\sigma \sup \{ \|\mathcal{B}x\| : x \in R \} \leq 1$. It remains for applying the Dhage theorem that $\mathcal{A}x\mathcal{B}x \in R$ whenever $x, y \in R$. To this end, it suffices to consider $x, y \in R, t_1, t_2 \in J$ with $t_1 < t_2$. It follows that

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{A}x\,(t_{2})\,\mathcal{B}y\,(t_{2}) &- \mathcal{A}x\,(t_{1})\,\mathcal{B}y\,(t_{1}) \\ &= \mathcal{A}x\,(t_{2})\,(\mathcal{B}y\,(t_{2}) - \mathcal{B}y\,(t_{1})) + (\mathcal{A}x\,(t_{2}) - \mathcal{A}x\,(t_{1}))\,\mathcal{B}y\,(t_{1}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\left(p\,(t_{2}) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{2}}\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}g\,(s,x\,(s))\,\frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &\times \left(\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}}\left(\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} - \left(\log\frac{t_{1}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}\right)f\,(s,y\,(s))\,\frac{ds}{s} + \int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}}\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}f\,(s,y\,(s))\,\frac{ds}{s}\right) \\ &+ \left(p\,(t_{2}) - p\,(t_{1}) + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}}\left(\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} - \left(\log\frac{t_{1}}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}\right)g\,(s,x\,(s))\,\frac{ds}{s} \\ &+ \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)}\int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}}\left(\log\frac{t_{2}}{s}\right)^{\beta-1}g\,(s,x\,(s))\,\frac{ds}{s}\right)\left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)}\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}}\left(\log\frac{t_{1}}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1}f\,(s,y\,(s))\,\frac{ds}{s}\right). \end{split}$$

Since $\left(\log \frac{t_2}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} - \left(\log \frac{t_1}{s}\right)^{\alpha-1} < 0$ and $\left(\log \frac{t_2}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} - \left(\log \frac{t_1}{s}\right)^{\beta-1} < 0$, then

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{A}x \left(t_{2} \right) \mathcal{B}y \left(t_{2} \right) &- \mathcal{A}x \left(t_{1} \right) \mathcal{B}y \left(t_{1} \right) \\ &\geq \frac{f \left(t_{1}, y \left(t_{1} \right) \right)}{\Gamma \left(\alpha \right)} \left(p \left(t_{2} \right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma \left(\beta \right)} \int_{t_{0}}^{t_{2}} \left(\log \frac{t_{2}}{s} \right)^{\beta - 1} g \left(s, x \left(s \right) \right) \frac{ds}{s} \right) \\ &\times \left(\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}} \left(\left(\log \frac{t_{2}}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} - \left(\log \frac{t_{1}}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} \right) \frac{ds}{s} + \int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}} \left(\log \frac{t_{2}}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} \frac{ds}{s} \right) \\ &+ \left(p \left(t_{2} \right) - p \left(t_{1} \right) + \frac{g \left(t_{1}, x \left(t_{1} \right) \right)}{\Gamma \left(\beta \right)} \left(\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}} \left(\log \frac{t_{2}}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} - \left(\log \frac{t_{1}}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} \right) \frac{ds}{s} \\ &+ \int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}} \left(\log \frac{t_{2}}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} \frac{ds}{s} \right) \right) \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma \left(\alpha \right)} \int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}} \left(\log \frac{t_{1}}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} f \left(s, y \left(s \right) \right) \frac{ds}{s} \right) \\ &\geq \frac{f \left(t_{1}, y \left(t_{1} \right) \right)}{\Gamma \left(\alpha + 1 \right)} \left(p \left(t_{2} \right) + \frac{1}{\Gamma \left(\beta \right)} \int_{t_{0}}^{t_{2}} \left(\log \frac{t_{2}}{s} \right)^{\beta - 1} g \left(s, x \left(s \right) \right) \frac{ds}{s} \right) \left(\left(\log \frac{t_{1}}{t_{0}} \right)^{\alpha} - \left(\log \frac{t_{1}}{t_{0}} \right)^{\alpha} \right) \\ &+ \left(p \left(t_{2} \right) - p \left(t_{1} \right) + \frac{g \left(t_{1}, x \left(t_{1} \right) \right)}{\Gamma \left(\beta + 1 \right)} \left(\left(\log \frac{t_{2}}{s} \right)^{\beta} - \left(\log \frac{t_{1}}{t_{0}} \right)^{\beta} \right) \right) \\ &\times \left(\theta + \frac{1}{\Gamma \left(\alpha \right)} \int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}} \left(\log \frac{t_{1}}{s} \right)^{\alpha - 1} f \left(s, y \left(s \right) \right) \frac{ds}{s} \right) \\ &\geq 0. \end{split}$$

Therefore, with the Dhage fixed point theorem the product operator $\mathcal{AB} : R \to R$ has a fixed point with the positivity and monotonicity nondecreasing properties which is a solution of the problem (1.1).

Remark 5.2. The results of Theorem 5.1 are valid in Corollaries 3.3-3.6 if the assumptions of Theorem 5.1 are added to Corollaries 3.3-3.6.



A. Ardjouni and M. Haoues

6. Examples

Example 6.1. Consider the Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equation

$$\begin{cases} CD^{\frac{2}{3}} \left(\frac{x\left(t\right)}{\frac{5+3t}{8} + \frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)} \int_{1}^{t} \left(\log \frac{t}{s}\right)^{-\frac{3}{4}} \left(\frac{x\left(s\right)+2}{x\left(s\right)+3}\right) \frac{ds}{s}} \right) = \frac{1}{5+t} \left(\frac{tx\left(t\right)}{x\left(t\right)+4} + 5\right), \ t \in (1,e], \\ x\left(1\right) = 0, \end{cases}$$
(6.1)

where $\alpha = 2/3$, $\beta = 1/4$, $\theta = 0$, $p(t) = \frac{5+3t}{8}$, $f(t,x) = \frac{1}{5+t} \left(\frac{tx}{x+4} + 5\right)$ and $g(t,x) = \frac{x+2}{x+3}$. Since g is nondecreasing on x,

$$\frac{2}{3} \leq g\left(t,x\right) \leq 1 \text{ and } \frac{5}{5+e} \leq f\left(t,x\right) \leq 1 \text{ for } t \in \left[1,e\right], \, x \in \left[0,+\infty\right),$$

and

$$L_g \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)} \left(|\theta| + c_f \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)} \right) \simeq 0.136 < 1.$$

Then, by Corollary 3.3, (6.1) has a positive solution which verifies $x_*(t) \le x(t) \le x^*(t)$ where

$$x_*(t) = \left(\frac{5+3t}{8} + \frac{2\left(\log t\right)^{\frac{1}{4}}}{3\Gamma\left(\frac{5}{4}\right)}\right) \frac{5}{5+e} \frac{\left(\log t\right)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)},$$

and

$$x^{*}(t) = \left(\frac{5+3t}{8} + \frac{(\log t)^{\frac{1}{4}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{5}{4}\right)}\right) \frac{(\log t)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)}.$$

This positive solution is unique due to the condition (4.1) is satisfied since

$$L_g \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)} \left(|\theta| + c_f \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)} \right) + \left(p_m + c_g \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)} \right) L_f \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)} \\ \simeq 0.404 < 1.$$

The property of non-decreasing of this solution is not valid in spite of f.

Example 6.2. Consider the Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equation

$$\begin{cases} {}^{C}D^{\frac{1}{3}}\left(\frac{x\left(t\right)}{\frac{t}{3}+1+\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\frac{2}{5}\right)}\int_{1}^{t}\left(\log\frac{t}{s}\right)^{-\frac{3}{5}}\left(2-\cos\left(x\left(s\right)\right)\right)\frac{ds}{s}}\right) = \frac{t}{6}\sin\left(x\left(t\right)\right), \ t\in\left(1,e\right], \\ x\left(1\right) = 4, \end{cases}$$
(6.2)

where $\alpha = 1/3$, $\beta = 2/5$, $\theta = 1/3$, $p(t) = \frac{t}{3} + 1$, $f(t, x) = \frac{t}{6} \sin x$ and $g(t, x) = 2 - \cos x$ for $t \in [1, e]$, $x \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$. Hence, g is nondecreasing on x and

$$0 \le f\left(t,x\right) \le \frac{e}{6}, \ 1 \le g\left(t,x\right) \le 2.$$



Since

$$L_g \frac{\left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\beta}}{\Gamma\left(\beta+1\right)} \left(|\theta| + \frac{c_f \left(\log \frac{T}{t_0}\right)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma\left(\alpha+1\right)} \right) \simeq 0.947 < 1.$$

Then, by Corollary 3.3, (6.2) has a positive solution which verifies $x_*(t) \le x(t) \le x^*(t)$ where

$$x_{*}(t) = \frac{t}{9} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{(\log t)^{\frac{2}{5}}}{3\Gamma\left(\frac{7}{5}\right)},$$

and

$$x^{*}(t) = \left(\frac{t}{3} + 1 + \frac{2\left(\log t\right)^{\frac{2}{5}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{7}{5}\right)}\right) \left(\frac{1}{3} + \frac{e\left(\log t\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{6\Gamma\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)}\right)$$

We could not guarantee this positive solution is unique due to the condition (4.1) is not satisfied. The property of non-decreasing of this positive solution is valid since f and g are increasing on $\left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ and p is increasing on $\left[1, e\right]$.

7. Conclusion

The hybrid nonlinear Caputo-Hadamard fractional integro-differential equation is considered. So, we have studied the existence, uniqueness and monotonicity of positive solutions. The main tool of this work is the method of upper and lower solutions and the Dhage and Banach fixed point theorems. However, by introducing a new fixed mapping, we obtain new positivity conditions.

References

- B. AHMAD AND S.K. NTOUYAS, Existence and uniqueness of solutions for Caputo-Hadamard sequential fractional order neutral functional differential equations, *Electronic Journal of Differential Equations*, 2017(36) (2017), 1–11.
- [2] B. AHMAD AND S.K. NTOUYAS, Nonlocal boundary value problems for hybrid fractional differential equations and inclusions of Hadamard type, *Fractional Differential Calculus*, **5**(2) (2015), 107–123.
- [3] B. AHMAD AND S.K. NTOUYAS, Initial-value problems for hybrid Hadamard fractional differential equations, *Electron. J. Differential Equations*, 2014(161) (2014), 1–8.
- [4] A. ARDJOUNI, Existence and uniqueness of positive solutions for nonlinear Caputo-Hadamard fractional differential equations, *Proyecciones*, **40**(1) (2021), 139–152.
- [5] A. ARDJOUNI, Positive solutions for nonlinear Hadamard fractional differential equations with integral boundary conditions, *AIMS Mathematics*, **4(4)** (2019), 1101–1113.
- [6] A. ARDJOUNI AND A. DJOUDI, Positive solutions for first-order nonlinear Caputo-Hadamard fractional relaxation differential equations, *Kragujevac Journal of Mathematics*, **45**(6) (2021), 897–908.
- [7] A. ARDJOUNI AND A. DJOUDI, Existence and uniqueness of positive solutions for first-order nonlinear Liouville-Caputo fractional differential equations, São Paulo J. Math. Sci., 14 (2020), 381–390.
- [8] A. ARDJOUNI AND A. DJOUDI, Approximating solutions of nonlinear hybrid Caputo fractional integrodifferential equations via Dhage iteration principle, *Ural Mathematical Journal*, **5**(1) (2019), 3–12.



A. Ardjouni and M. Haoues

- [9] A. ARDJOUNI AND A DJOUDI, Existence and uniqueness of solutions for nonlinear hybrid implicit Caputo-Hadamard fractional differential equations, *Results in Nonlinear Analysis*, **2(3)** (2019) 136–142.
- [10] A. ARDJOUNI, A. LACHOURI AND A. DJOUDI, Existence and uniqueness results for nonlinear hybrid implicit Caputo-Hadamard fractional differential equations, *Open Journal of Mathematical Analysis*, 3(2) (2019), 106–111.
- [11] H. BOULARES, A. ARDJOUNI AND Y. LASKRI, Positive solutions for nonlinear fractional differential equations, *Positivity*, **21** (2017), 1201–1212.
- [12] H. BOULARES, A. ARDJOUNI AND Y. LASKRI, Stability in delay nonlinear fractional differential equations, *Rend. Circ. Mat. Palermo*, **65** (2016), 243–253.
- [13] B.C. DHAGE, Hybrid fixed point theory in partially ordered normed linear spaces and applications to fractional integral equations, *Differ. Equ Appl.*, 5 (2013), 155–184.
- [14] B.C. DHAGE, G.T. KHURPE, A.Y. SHETE AND J.N. SALUNKE, Existence and approximate solutions for nonlinear hybrid fractional integro-differential equations, *International Journal of Analysis and Applications*, **11(2)** (2016), 157–167.
- [15] B.C. DHAGE AND V. LAKSHMIKANTHAM, Basic results on hybrid differential equations, Nonlinear Anal. Hybrid Syst., 4 (2010), 414–424.
- [16] F. GE AND C. KOU, Stability analysis by Krasnoselskii's fixed point theorem for nonlinear fractional differential equations, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, **257** (2015), 308–316.
- [17] F. GE AND C. KOU, Asymptotic stability of solutions of nonlinear fractional differential equations of order $1 < \alpha < 2$, *Journal of Shanghai Normal University*, **44(3)** (2015), 284–290.
- [18] M. HAOUES, A. ARDJOUNI AND A DJOUDI, Existence, uniqueness and monotonicity of positive solutions for hybrid fractional integro-differential equations, *Asia Mathematika*, 4(3) (2020), 1–13
- [19] A.A. KILBAS, H.M. SRIVASTAVA AND J.J. TRUJILLO, Theory and Applications of Fractional Differential Equations, *Elsevier Science B. V., Amsterdam*, 2006.
- [20] N. LI AND C. WANG, New existence results of positive solution for a class of nonlinear fractional differential equations, Acta Math. Sci., 33 (2013) 847–854.
- [21] M. MATAR, Qualitative properties of solution for hybrid nonlinear fractional differential equations, *Afrika Matematika*, **30**(7-8) (2019), 1169–1179.
- [22] Y. ZHAO, S. SUN, Z. HAN AND Q. LI, Theory of fractional hybrid differential equations, *Comput. Math. Appl.*, 62 (2011), 1312–1324.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.



MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK

Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 181–193. http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/002

On rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space

GÜLŞAH AYDIN ŞEKERCİ^{*1}, SIBEL SEVİNÇ² AND ABDILKADIR CEYLAN ÇÖKEN³

¹ Faculty of Arts and Sciences, Department of Mathematics, Süleyman Demirel University, Isparta, Turkey.

² Faculty of Arts and Sciences, Department of Mathematics, Adnan Menderes University, Aydın, Turkey.

³ Faculty of Science, Department of Mathematics, Akdeniz University, Antalya, Turkey.

Received 12 July 2021; Accepted 17 September 2021

Abstract. In this study, we investigate a rectifying curve by using a dilation of a unit speed curve on pseudo-sphere or pseudo-hyperbolic space and its centrode. Firstly, considering a causal character of any curve, we study the connection between Serret-Frenet apparatus of the curve on pseudo-sphere or pseudo-hyperbolic space and its dilation. Then, we extend necessary conditions when the centrode is a rectifying curve. Also, we examine some properties of centrode which is a rectifying curve.

AMS Subject Classifications: 53C40, 53C50.

Keywords: Rectifying curve, Minkowski 3-space, Frenet equations, centrode, helix.

Contents

1	Introduction	181
2	Preliminaries	182
3	On the Rectifying Curves and the Dilation of Curves	183
4	Centrodes as Rectifying Curves	186

1. Introduction

Characterization of a curve allows to classify curves according to some properties. Thus, instead of doing analysis for each curve, working on these classes is appeared as a more convenient way. One example for the characterized curves is a rectifying curve. The curve was put forward by B. Y. Chen in [1]. In three dimensional Euclidean space \mathbb{E}^3 , if $\alpha : I \subseteq \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{E}^3$ be a unit speed regular curve with Frenet frame $\{T, N, B\}$ where T is a tangent vector field, N is a normal vector field and B is a binormal vector field, then an osculating plane is a plane spanned by the vector fields $\{T, N\}$, a rectifying plane is a plane spanned by the vector fields $\{T, B\}$ and a normal plane is a plane spanned by the vector fields $\{N, B\}$. The rectifying curve is a curve whose position vector field is located on the rectifying plane. Thus, Chen showed that a rectifying curve α is denoted by the equation

$$\alpha(s) = \eta(s) T(s) + \xi(s) B(s)$$

where the functions η and ξ are differentiable. Also, it is known that the rectifying curve is characterized as the curve whose ratio of torsion and curvature is a linear fuction of arc parameter in \mathbb{E}^3 [1]. By analyzing the characterization of rectifying curve, it is interpreted kinematically because the position vector field of the curve

^{*}Corresponding author. Email address: gulsahaydin@sdu.edu.tr (Gülşah AYDIN ŞEKERCİ)

Gülşah AYDIN ŞEKERCİ Sibel SEVİNÇ and Abdilkadir Ceylan ÇÖKEN

states the axis of instantaneous rotation at each point. In addition to that, the connection between rectifying curves and their centrodes is used to study in general mechanics. Firstly, Chen [2] established the connection between rectifying curves and their centrodes in Euclidean 3-space. Since these curves are important, many studies have been conducted on this subject. In this section, we just mention some of them. One of them was made by İlarslan et. al [5]. According to that, they gave some characterizations of timelike, spacelike, null rectifying curves. Moreover, these curves in dual space were examined in [9]. So, they were explored by taking advantage of the relationship between the curve on a unit dual sphere and the surface theory. Additionally, the modified Darboux vector of curve was described and it was shown that this vector is a rectifying curve [8]. Deshmukh et.al [3] developed the necessary circumstances for the centrode of a curve to be a rectifying curve in Euclidean 3-space and also, they presented the results about the dilation for rectifying curves and centrodes. This study has been the main motivation of our study.

In this study, we research on the rectifying curves in the Minkowski 3-space. First of all, we use that the dilation of u(t) is written as $\alpha(t) = f(t)u(t)$ where u(t) is a curve on the unit sphere S^2 centered at the origin and the fuction f(t) is positive differentiable. If the curve $\alpha(t)$ is the rectifying curve, then the dilation factor f(t) is given by $f(t) = a \sec(t + t_0)$. Here, a > 0 and t_0 are constants [1]. However, this dilation factor in Minkowski 3-space is defined as different ways for the curves $\alpha(t)$ and u(t) [5]. Considering this difference, Frenet-Serret apparatus of α are given in terms of the curve u(t). It was also shown in [4] that the centrode of $\alpha(t)$ is rectifying curve in Minkowski 3-space when it has non-zero constant curvature and non-constant torsion. Here, we generalize this result. For this, we show that the centrode of any helix is not a rectifying curve in Minkowski 3-space. Then, using this feature and considering the causal characters of Frenet-Serret vectors, we obtain that the centrode of non-helix curve is the rectifying curve if and only if it satisfies the condition $a\kappa - b\tau = c$ where a, b, c are constants. Finally, there are many cases from the choices of plane and curve, so we consider all the cases and give some notations for the centrode of $\alpha(t)$. We find the relations between Frenet-Serret apparatus of α .

2. Preliminaries

Let \mathbb{E}_1^3 be a space with the metric g denoted by

$$g = -dx_1^2 + dx_2^2 + dx_3^2 \tag{2.1}$$

where $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$ is a rectangular coordinate system of \mathbb{E}_1^3 and also, it is called the three-dimensional Minkowski space. Pseudo-sphere of radius 1 centered at origin is a hyperquadric in \mathbb{E}_1^3 and is given by

$$S_1^2(1) = \left\{ v \in \mathbb{E}_1^3 \mid g(v, v) = 1 \right\}$$
(2.2)

and pseudo-hyperbolic space of radius 1 centered at origin is defined by

$$H_0^2(1) = \left\{ v \in \mathbb{E}_1^3 \mid g(v, v) = -1 \right\}.$$
(2.3)

Let $\alpha(s)$ be a curve with an arc-length parameter s. It is the non-null curve that satisfies the property $g(\alpha'(s), \alpha'(s)) = \pm 1$ where \prime is the derivation of α [7]. For the Frenet frame $\{T, N, B\}$ of a unit speed non-null curve $\alpha(s)$ in \mathbb{E}^3_1 , the Frenet formulas are given in [6] by

$$T'(s) = \varepsilon_1 \kappa(s) N(s),$$

$$N'(s) = -\varepsilon_0 \kappa(s) T(s) + \varepsilon_2 \tau(s) B(s),$$

$$B'(s) = -\varepsilon_1 \tau(s) N(s)$$
(2.4)

for $g(T,T) = \varepsilon_0 = \pm 1$, $g(N,N) = \varepsilon_1 = \pm 1$ and $g(B,B) = -\varepsilon_0\varepsilon_1 = \varepsilon_2$ where T, N, B are known as the tangent vector field, the principal normal vector field, the binormal vector field, respectively. Assume that for



On rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space

Frenet frame of α , there exists the vector product as

$$B = T \times N, -\varepsilon_1 T = N \times B, -\varepsilon_0 N = B \times T.$$
(2.5)

The centrode of $\alpha: I \to \mathbb{E}^3_1$ is defined by

$$d = -\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \tau T - \varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \kappa B \tag{2.6}$$

which is the angular velocity vector of the motion of a mass particle along the curve α and it obeys the laws of motion [4]

$$T' = d \times T, N' = d \times N, B' = d \times B.$$
(2.7)

In addition, the rectifying curves are formed by expanding a unit speed curve on a unit sphere with a special factor f. To characterize such rectifying curves in \mathbb{E}^3_1 , İlarslan et.al [5] gave a theorem. According to this theorem, a unit speed non-null curve $\alpha = \alpha(s)$ is written as the dilation of the curve u(t) to be rectifying curve. So, it is a rectifying curve with a spacelike rectifying plane if and only if it satisfies the condition

$$\alpha(t) = u(t) \frac{l}{\cos t}$$
(2.8)

where $l \in \mathbb{R}_0^+$ and u(t) is a unit speed spacelike curve on $S_1^2(1)$. Also, it is a spacelike (or timelike) rectifying curve with a spacelike (or timelike) position vector if and only if it satisfies the condition

$$\alpha(t) = u(t) \frac{l}{\sinh t}$$
(2.9)

where u(t) is a unit speed timelike (or spacelike) curve on $S_1^2(1)$. Finally, it is a spacelike (or timelike) rectifying curve with a spacelike (or timelike) position vector if and only if it satisfies the condition

$$\alpha(t) = u(t) \frac{l}{\cosh t} \tag{2.10}$$

where u(t) is a unit speed spacelike (or timelike) curve on $H_0^2(1)$ (or $S_1^2(1)$).

3. On the Rectifying Curves and the Dilation of Curves

In Minkowski 3-space, let u(t) be a unit speed spacelike or timelike curve lying on $S_1^2(1)$ or $H_1^2(1)$ and $\alpha(t)$ be a dilated rectifying curve of u(t). Now, we give the connections between the Frenet-Serret apparatus of the curves $\alpha(t)$ and u(t) in Minkowski 3-space. For this, the different results are obtained by considering some theorems in [5], because the dilation $\alpha(t)$ of u(t) is defined according to the causal characters of the curves $\alpha(t)$ and u(t).

We assume that α is a spacelike rectifying curve with spacelike position vector on timelike rectifying plane and u(t) is a unit speed timelike curve on pseudo-sphere $S_1^2(1)$. Then, there exists the dilation $\alpha(t) = \frac{a}{\sinh t}u(t)$. In this case, since the rectifying plane is timelike, clearly its normal vector N_{α} is spacelike, so $g(N_{\alpha}, N_{\alpha}) = 1$. If the curve α is spacelike, the tangent of α is also spacelike. Furthermore, its position vector is spacelike, so we have $g(\alpha, \alpha) > 0$, g(u', u') = -1 and g(u, u) = 1.

We know that $T_u = u'$ and $\{u, u', u \times u'\}$ is an orthonormal frame of \mathbb{E}^3_1 . We easily write

$$u'' = T'_u = au + bT_u + cu \times T_u.$$

When we use timelike curve u and $\langle u', u \rangle = 0$, we find a = 1. Similarly, b = 0 is found. Also, we assume $c = \langle u'', u \times u' \rangle = r$. Then, we get

$$u'' = u + ru \times u'. \tag{3.1}$$

Gülşah AYDIN ŞEKERCİ Sibel SEVİNÇ and Abdilkadir Ceylan ÇÖKEN

From (3.1) and using Frenet equations for u(t), there exists

$$\|u''\| = \sqrt{1+r^2} = \kappa_u \tag{3.2}$$

where κ_u is a curvature of the unit speed timelike curve u(t) and we find

$$T_u = u', N_u = \frac{1}{\kappa_u} u + \frac{r}{\kappa_u} u \times u'.$$
(3.3)

Theorem 3.1. Let u(t) be a unit speed timelike curve on the unit sphere $S_1^2(1)$ in \mathbb{E}_1^3 , $\alpha(t)$ be a spacelike rectifying curve on a timelike rectifying plane and its position vector be a spacelike vector defined by $\alpha(t) = \frac{a}{\sinh(t+t_0)}u(t)$, $a \in \mathbb{R}^+$. Then, the relation between the Frenet-Serret apparatus of $\alpha(t)$ and u(t) is as follows:

$$\begin{split} T_{\alpha} &= \sinh \left(t + t_{0} \right) u' - \cosh \left(t + t_{0} \right) u, \\ N_{\alpha} &= u \times u', \\ B_{\alpha} &= \sinh \left(t + t_{0} \right) u - \cosh \left(t + t_{0} \right) u', \\ \kappa_{\alpha} &= \frac{1}{a} \sqrt{\kappa_{u}^{2} - 1} \sinh^{3} \left(t + t_{0} \right), \\ \tau_{\alpha} &= \frac{1}{a} \sqrt{\kappa_{u}^{2} - 1} \cosh \left(t + t_{0} \right) \sinh^{2} \left(t + t_{0} \right) \end{split}$$

where T_{α} , N_{α} , B_{α} , κ_{α} , τ_{α} are the tangent vector, normal vector, binormal vector, curvature, torsion of $\alpha(t)$, respectively, and κ_u is the curvature of u(t).

Proof. Let α is given by $\alpha(t) = \frac{a}{\sinh(t+t_0)}u(t)$ and $\{u, u', u \times u'\}$ is an orthonormal frame of \mathbb{E}^3_1 . Thus, we get $\|\alpha'(t)\| = \frac{a}{\sinh^2(t+t_0)} = v_{\alpha}$ and

$$T_{\alpha} = \sinh(t + t_0) \, u' - \cosh(t + t_0) \, u. \tag{3.4}$$

Then differentiating T_{α} , we obtain

$$T'_{\alpha} = \cosh(t+t_0) u' + \sinh(t+t_0) u'' - \sinh(t+t_0) u - \cosh(t+t_0) u'$$

= $r \sinh(t+t_0) u \times u'$
= $\varepsilon_1 v_{\alpha} \kappa_{\alpha} N_{\alpha}$.

From (3.2) we write $r = \sqrt{\kappa_u^2 - 1}$. Furthermore, for the left side of (3.2) we say that $u \times u'$ is equal to N_α because both of them are unit vectors. So, if we write $\left[\frac{r \sinh(t+t_0)}{a} \sinh^2(t+t_0)\right] u \times u' = a\kappa_\alpha N_\alpha$, then we get $N_\alpha = u \times u'$ and also

$$\kappa_{\alpha} = \frac{1}{a} \sqrt{\kappa_u^2 - 1} \sinh^3\left(t + t_0\right). \tag{3.5}$$

We know that $B_{\alpha} = T_{\alpha} \times N_{\alpha}$. Then

$$B_{\alpha} = \sinh(t + t_0) u - \cosh(t + t_0) u'.$$
(3.6)

After differentiating (3.6), we find

$$B'_{\alpha} = \cosh(t+t_0) u + \sinh(t+t_0) u' - \sinh(t+t_0) u' - \cosh(t+t_0) u''$$
$$= -r \cosh(t+t_0) u \times u'$$
$$= -\varepsilon_1 v_{\alpha} \tau_{\alpha} N_{\alpha}$$



On rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space

which gives $[r \cosh(t + t_0)] u \times u' = v_{\alpha} \tau_{\alpha} N_{\alpha}$ that is,

$$\tau_{\alpha} = \frac{1}{a} \sqrt{\kappa_u^2 - 1} \cosh\left(t + t_0\right) \sinh^2\left(t + t_0\right). \tag{3.7}$$

Thus, we establish the desired relationships.

Every curves, which is constituted by $\alpha(t) = \frac{a}{\sinh(t+t_0)}u(t)$, do not have to be a rectifying curve. This result is valid for the curves which are not arc of the great circle. To show that, let u(t) be an arc of the great circle on $S_1^2(1)$ given by $u(t) = (\sinh t, 0, \cosh t)$. We write $\alpha(t) = a\left(\frac{\sinh t}{\sinh(t+t_0)}, 0, \frac{\cosh t}{\sinh(t+t_0)}\right)$. Hence, we have $\|\alpha'(t)\| = \frac{a}{\sinh^2(t+t_0)}$ and $T_{\alpha} = (\sinh t_0, 0, -\cosh t_0)$. Thus, $\kappa_{\alpha} = 0$ and finally we say that $\alpha(t)$ is not a rectifying curve.

Theorem 3.2. Let u(t) be a unit speed spacelike curve on the unit sphere $S_1^2(1)$ in \mathbb{E}_1^3 , $\alpha(t)$ be a rectifying curve on a spacelike rectifying plane defined by $\alpha(t) = \frac{a}{\cos(t+t_0)}u(t)$, $a \in \mathbb{R}^+$. Then the relation between the Frenet-Serret apparatus of $\alpha(t)$ and u(t) is as follows:

$$T_{\alpha} = \cos(t + t_0) u' + \sin(t + t_0) u,$$

$$N_{\alpha} = u \times u',$$

$$B_{\alpha} = -\cos(t + t_0) u + \sin(t + t_0) u',$$

$$\kappa_{\alpha} = \frac{1}{a} \sqrt{1 - \kappa_u^2} \cos^3(t + t_0),$$

$$\tau_{\alpha} = \frac{-1}{a} \sqrt{1 - \kappa_u^2} \sin(t + t_0) \cos^2(t + t_0)$$

where T_{α} , N_{α} , B_{α} , κ_{α} , τ_{α} are the tangent vector, normal vector, binormal vector, curvature, torsion of $\alpha(t)$, respectively, and κ_u is the curvature of u(t).

Theorem 3.3. Let u(t) be a unit speed spacelike curve on the unit sphere $S_1^2(1)$ in \mathbb{E}_1^3 , $\alpha(t)$ be a timelike rectifying curve on a timelike rectifying plane and its position vector be a timelike vector defined by $\alpha(t) = \frac{a}{\sinh(t+t_0)}u(t)$, $a \in \mathbb{R}^+$. Then the relation between the Frenet-Serret apparatus of $\alpha(t)$ and u(t) is as follows:

$$\begin{split} T_{\alpha} &= \frac{\sinh\left(t+t_{0}\right)}{\sqrt{\cosh 2\left(t+t_{0}\right)}} u' - \frac{\cosh\left(t+t_{0}\right)}{\sqrt{\cosh 2\left(t+t_{0}\right)}} u, \\ N_{\alpha} &= \frac{-2\sinh(t+t_{0})}{f(t)\sqrt{\cosh 2(t+t_{0})}} \left(\cosh(t+t_{0})u' + \sinh(t+t_{0})u\right) \\ &- \frac{1}{f(t)}\sqrt{\left(1-\kappa_{u}^{2}\right)\cosh 2(t+t_{0})} u \times u', \\ B_{\alpha} &= \frac{\sqrt{1-\kappa_{u}^{2}}}{f(t)} \left\{\sinh\left(t+t_{0}\right)u + \cosh\left(t+t_{0}\right)u'\right\} + \frac{2\sinh\left(t+t_{0}\right)}{f(t)}u \times u', \\ \kappa_{\alpha} &= \frac{\sinh^{3}\left(t+t_{0}\right)}{a\cosh^{3/2}2\left(t+t_{0}\right)} \left\{4\sinh^{2}\left(t+t_{0}\right) - \left(1-\kappa_{u}\right)^{2}\cosh 2\left(t+t_{0}\right)\right\}^{1/2}, \\ \tau_{\alpha} &= \frac{\sqrt{\cosh^{3/2}2\left(t+t_{0}\right)}}{f^{2}(t)} \left[-2\kappa_{u}\sinh(t+t_{0}) - \sqrt{1-\kappa_{u}^{2}}\cosh(t+t_{0})\left(1+\kappa_{u}^{2}\right)\right] \end{split}$$



Gülşah AYDIN ŞEKERCİ Sibel SEVİNÇ and Abdilkadir Ceylan ÇÖKEN

where $T_{\alpha}, N_{\alpha}, B_{\alpha}, \kappa_{\alpha}, \tau_{\alpha}$ are the tangent vector, normal vector, binormal vector, curvature, torsion of $\alpha(t)$, respectively, and κ_u is the curvature of u. Also, f(t) is the function such that $f(t) = \{(1 - \cosh 2(t + t_0))^2 - (1 - \kappa_u^2)\cosh 2(t + t_0)\sin^2(t + t_0)\}$.

Theorem 3.4. Let u(t) be a unit speed spacelike curve on the unit sphere $H_0^2(1)$ in \mathbb{E}_1^3 , $\alpha(t)$ be a spacelike rectifying curve on a timelike rectifying plane and its position vector be a timelike vector defined by $\alpha(t) = \frac{a}{\cosh(t+t_0)}u(t)$. Then the relation between the Frenet apparatus of $\alpha(t)$ and u(t) is as follows:

$$\begin{split} T_{\alpha} &= \cosh\left(t+t_{0}\right)u' - \sinh\left(t+t_{0}\right)u,\\ N_{\alpha} &= u \times u',\\ B_{\alpha} &= -\cosh\left(t+t_{0}\right)u + \sinh\left(t+t_{0}\right)u',\\ \kappa_{\alpha} &= \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{1+\kappa_{u}^{2}}\cosh^{3}\left(t+t_{0}\right),\\ \tau_{\alpha} &= -\frac{1}{a}\sqrt{1+\kappa_{u}^{2}}\sinh\left(t+t_{0}\right)\cosh^{2}\left(t+t_{0}\right) \end{split}$$

where T_{α} , N_{α} , B_{α} , κ_{α} , τ_{α} are the tangent vector, normal vector, binormal vector, curvature, torsion of $\alpha(t)$, respectively, and κ_u is the curvature of u(t).

Theorem 3.5. Let u(t) be a unit speed timelike curve on the unit sphere $S_1^2(1)$ in \mathbb{E}_1^3 , $\alpha(t)$ be a timelike rectifying curve on a timelike rectifying plane and its position vector be a spacelike vector defined by $\alpha(t) = \frac{a}{\cosh(t+t_0)}u(t)$. Then the relation between the Frenet-Serret apparatus of $\alpha(t)$ and u(t) is as follows:

$$\begin{split} T_{\alpha} &= \cosh\left(t + t_{0}\right)u' - \sinh\left(t + t_{0}\right)u, \\ N_{\alpha} &= u \times u', \\ B_{\alpha} &= \cosh\left(t + t_{0}\right)u - \sinh\left(t + t_{0}\right)u', \\ \kappa_{\alpha} &= \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{\kappa_{u}^{2} - 1}\cosh^{3}\left(t + t_{0}\right), \\ \tau_{\alpha} &= \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{\kappa_{u}^{2} - 1}\sinh\left(t + t_{0}\right)\cosh^{2}\left(t + t_{0}\right) \end{split}$$

where T_{α} , N_{α} , B_{α} , κ_{α} , τ_{α} are the tangent vector, normal vector, binormal vector, curvature, torsion of $\alpha(t)$, respectively, and κ_u is the curvature of u(t).

4. Centrodes as Rectifying Curves

In this section, considering the Frenet vectors of the curve α in \mathbb{E}_1^3 and their causal characters, we give a proposition that if the curve α is the helix, then its centrode is a line segment. Then using this proposition, we examine the features, which should be provided by the curves whose centrodes are the rectifying curves except the helix. In the previous studies [1, 4], it was shown for the curves with the constant (or non-constant) curvature κ and the non-constant (or constant) torsion τ . Here, this result has been expanded.

Let $\alpha: I \subseteq \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{E}^3_1$ be a unit speed curve with Frenet frame $\{T_\alpha, N_\alpha, B_\alpha\}$ and also,

$$g(T_{\alpha}, T_{\alpha}) = \varepsilon_0, g(N_{\alpha}, N_{\alpha}) = \varepsilon_1, g(B_{\alpha}, B_{\alpha}) = \varepsilon_2.$$
(4.1)

Morever, let $d: I \subseteq \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{E}_1^3$ be the centrode of α with its Frenet frame $\{T_d, N_d, B_d\}$. Then we have $T'_{\alpha} = d \times T_{\alpha}, N'_{\alpha} = d \times N_{\alpha}$ and $B'_{\alpha} = d \times B_{\alpha}$. For all the cases of the unit speed curve α , the centrode d is written by

$$d = -\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \tau_\alpha T_\alpha - \varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \kappa_\alpha B_\alpha. \tag{4.2}$$

On rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space

Now, we find the Serret-Frenet apparatus of d. For this, we use $d' = -\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \tau'_\alpha T_\alpha - \varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \kappa'_\alpha B_\alpha$. Using d' we obtain $||d'||^2 = (\tau'_\alpha)^2 \varepsilon_0 + \varepsilon_2 (\kappa'_\alpha)^2$, then the speed of centrode d is given by $v_d = \sqrt{\varepsilon_0 (\tau'_\alpha)^2 + \varepsilon_2 (\kappa'_\alpha)^2}$. Additionally,

$$T_d = -\frac{\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \tau'_{\alpha} T_{\alpha}}{\upsilon_d} - \frac{\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \kappa'_{\alpha} B_{\alpha}}{\upsilon_d}.$$
(4.3)

Differentiating (4.3) we find

$$T'_{d} = \left(-\frac{\varepsilon_{0}\varepsilon_{1}\tau'_{\alpha}}{\upsilon_{d}}\right)'T_{\alpha} - \frac{\varepsilon_{0}\varepsilon_{1}\tau'_{\alpha}}{\upsilon_{d}}T'_{\alpha} + \left(-\frac{\varepsilon_{0}\varepsilon_{2}\kappa'_{\alpha}}{\upsilon_{d}}\right)'B_{\alpha} - \frac{\varepsilon_{0}\varepsilon_{2}\kappa'_{\alpha}}{\upsilon_{d}}B'_{\alpha}$$

The centrode d does not have to be unit speed, then we get

$$\varepsilon_{1}^{d}\kappa_{d}v_{d}N_{d} = \left(-\frac{\varepsilon_{0}\varepsilon_{1}\tau_{\alpha}'}{v_{d}}\right)'T_{\alpha} - \frac{\varepsilon_{0}\tau_{\alpha}'}{v_{d}}\kappa_{\alpha}N_{\alpha} - \left(\frac{\varepsilon_{0}\varepsilon_{1}\kappa_{\alpha}'}{v_{d}}\right)'B_{\alpha} + \frac{\varepsilon_{0}\kappa_{\alpha}'}{v_{d}}\tau_{\alpha}N_{\alpha}$$
$$= -\left(\frac{\varepsilon_{0}\varepsilon_{1}\tau_{\alpha}'}{v_{d}}\right)'T_{\alpha} - \frac{\varepsilon_{0}\tau_{\alpha}'\kappa_{\alpha} - \varepsilon_{0}\kappa_{\alpha}'\tau_{\alpha}}{v_{d}}N_{\alpha} - \left(\frac{\varepsilon_{0}\varepsilon_{1}\kappa_{\alpha}'}{v_{d}}\right)'B_{\alpha}.$$
(4.4)

Using this equation we give the following proposition about helices.

Proposition 4.1. Let $\alpha : I \to \mathbb{E}_1^3$ be a unit speed curve whose curvature κ_{α} and torsion τ_{α} satisfy $\kappa_{\alpha} > 0$ and $\varepsilon_0 (\tau'_{\alpha})^2 + \varepsilon_2 (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 \neq 0$. Then α is a helix if and only if its centrode d is a line segment.

Proof. We assume that the centrode of α is a line segment, then its curvature is zero, namely $\kappa_d = 0$. In (4.4), the coefficients of $T_{\alpha}, N_{\alpha}, B_{\alpha}$ are also zero since $T_{\alpha}, N_{\alpha}, B_{\alpha}$ vectors are linearly independent. Then, we write the following:

(i)
$$\left(\frac{\varepsilon_0\varepsilon_1\tau'_{\alpha}}{v_d}\right)' = 0,$$

(ii) $\frac{\varepsilon_0\tau'_{\alpha}\kappa_{\alpha} - \varepsilon_0\kappa'_{\alpha}\tau_{\alpha}}{v_d} = 0,$
(iii) $\left(\frac{\varepsilon_0\varepsilon_1\kappa'_{\alpha}}{v_d}\right)' = 0.$
For (ii) form $u_{\alpha} \neq 0$ there

For (*ii*), from $v_d \neq 0$ there is $\varepsilon_0 \tau'_{\alpha} \kappa_{\alpha} - \varepsilon_0 \kappa'_{\alpha} \tau_{\alpha} = 0$. We know that $\varepsilon_0 \neq 0$. If we divide both sides of the equation to ε_0 , then we find $\tau'_{\alpha} \kappa_{\alpha} - \kappa'_{\alpha} \tau_{\alpha} = 0$. Thus, we write that $\frac{\tau'_{\alpha}}{\kappa'_{\alpha}} = \frac{\tau_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}}$ and

$$\left(\frac{\tau_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}}\right)' = \frac{\tau_{\alpha}' \kappa_{\alpha} - \tau_{\alpha} \kappa_{\alpha}'}{\kappa_{\alpha}^2} = 0.$$

Consequently, $\frac{\tau_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}}$ is constant and α is a helix. Conversely, if α is a helix, then we write $\tau_{\alpha} = c\kappa_{\alpha}, c \neq 0$. Using (4.4),

$$\varepsilon_1^d \kappa_d \upsilon_d N_d = -\left(\frac{\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 c \kappa'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d}\right)' T_\alpha - \frac{\varepsilon_0 c \kappa'_\alpha \kappa_\alpha - \varepsilon_0 \kappa'_\alpha c \kappa_\alpha}{\upsilon_d} N_\alpha - \left(\frac{\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \kappa'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d}\right)' B_\alpha$$
$$= \frac{\left(-\varepsilon_0 \kappa''_\alpha \upsilon_d + \varepsilon_0 \kappa'_\alpha \upsilon'_d\right)}{\upsilon_d^2} \left(\varepsilon_1 c T_\alpha + \varepsilon_1 B_\alpha\right).$$

Now, we investigate the cases in Minkowski 3-space. Firstly, we obtain

$$\kappa_d^2 v_d^2 g\left(N_d, N_d\right) = \left(\varepsilon_0 c^2 + \varepsilon_2\right) \left[\left(\frac{\kappa_\alpha'}{v_d}\right)' \right]^2$$



Gülşah AYDIN ŞEKERCİ Sibel SEVİNÇ and Abdilkadir Ceylan ÇÖKEN

and also

$$\varepsilon_0^d = \varepsilon_0 \left(\frac{c\kappa_\alpha'}{v_d}\right)^2 + \varepsilon_2 \left(\frac{\kappa_\alpha'}{v_d}\right)^2$$

where ε_0^d is the signature of T_d , that is $g(T_d, T_d) = \varepsilon_0^d$. Here, differentiating both sides, we write

$$2\varepsilon_0 \frac{c\kappa'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d} \left(\frac{c\kappa'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d}\right)' + 2\varepsilon_2 \frac{\kappa'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d} \left(\frac{\kappa'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d}\right)' = 0.$$

Hence, it is $\varepsilon_0 c^2 + \varepsilon_2 = 0$, $\frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{v_d} = 0$ or $\left(\frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{v_d}\right)' = 0$.

(1) For
$$\varepsilon_0 c^2 + \varepsilon_2 = 0$$
, there exists $\kappa_d^2 v_d^2 g(N_d, N_d) = 0$. From $g(N_d, N_d) \neq 0$ and $v_d^2 \neq 0$, then $\kappa_d = 0$.
(2) For $\frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{v_d} = 0$, clearly $\kappa_d = 0$.
(3) For $\left(\frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{v_d}\right)' 0$, clearly $\kappa_d = 0$.
Therefore, if α is a helix, then the centrode of α is a line segment.

Theorem 4.2. Let α be a unit speed spacelike (timelike) curve in \mathbb{E}_1^3 with a timelike(spacelike) binormal, $\kappa_{\alpha}, \tau_{\alpha} \neq 0$ and $(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 \neq 0$. If α is not a helix, then the centrode d of α is a rectifying curve if and only if κ_{α} and τ_{α} satisfy the equation $a\kappa_{\alpha} - b\tau_{\alpha} = c$ where a, b, c are constants and they provide the conditions $c \neq 0, a^2 - b^2 \neq 0$.

Proof. Let $\alpha = \alpha(t)$ be a unit speed curve in \mathbb{E}_1^3 and $\kappa_{\alpha}, \tau_{\alpha} \neq 0$, $\varepsilon_0 (\tau'_{\alpha})^2 + \varepsilon_2 (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 \neq 0$, namely α is not a null curve. If α is not a helix, then we use (4.4) and (4.2). So, we get

$$\varepsilon_1^d \kappa_d v_d g(N_d(t), d(t)) = \varepsilon_0 \tau_\alpha \left(\frac{\tau_\alpha'}{v_d}\right)' + \varepsilon_2 \kappa_\alpha \left(\frac{\kappa_\alpha'}{v_d}\right)'.$$
(4.5)

If the centrode d of α is a rectifying curve, the multiplication of the position vector field of d and N_d is zero. Since α is not a helix, d is not a line segment and $\kappa_d \neq 0$. From $\kappa_d > 0$ and $v_d \neq 0$, we write $g(N_d, d) = 0$. Then we find

$$\varepsilon_0 \tau_\alpha \left(\frac{\tau'_\alpha}{v_d}\right)' + \varepsilon_2 \kappa_\alpha \left(\frac{\kappa'_\alpha}{v_d}\right)' = 0.$$
(4.6)

This equation shows that, if the centrode d of α is rectifying curve, then it satisfies (4.2). Now, we use (4.6) and try to obtain better notation. Let α be a unit speed curve in \mathbb{E}_1^3 with a timelike binormal vector. We have

$$\tau_{\alpha} \left(\frac{\tau_{\alpha}'}{v_d}\right)' - \kappa_{\alpha} \left(\frac{\kappa_{\alpha}'}{v_d}\right)' = 0$$

and from the hypotesis of the theorem, we take $(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 \neq 0$. Then, it is $(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 > 0$ or $(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 < 0$.

 $Case 1: \text{We assume that } (\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 > 0. \text{ In this situation, if } \tau'_{\alpha} \text{ is zero, then the condition } (\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 > 0 \text{ is not satisfied. So } \tau'_{\alpha} \neq 0. \text{ Then, let } \theta_1(t) \text{ be a function defined by } sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{\tau'_{\alpha}}\right). \text{ Using the equations}$

$$\sin \theta_1 (t) = \frac{\kappa'_\alpha}{\tau'_\alpha}, \cos \theta_1 (t) = \frac{\sqrt{(\tau'_\alpha)^2 - (\kappa'_\alpha)^2}}{\tau'_\alpha},$$
$$\tan \theta_1 (t) = \frac{\kappa'_\alpha}{\sqrt{(\tau'_\alpha)^2 - (\kappa'_\alpha)^2}}, \sec \theta_1 (t) = \frac{\tau'_\alpha}{\sqrt{(\tau'_\alpha)^2 - (\kappa'_\alpha)^2}}$$



On rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space

then we get

$$\tau_{\alpha} \left(\sec \theta_{1}\left(t\right)\right)' - \kappa_{\alpha} \left(\tan \theta_{1}\left(t\right)\right)' = 0, \\ \theta_{1}'\left(t\right) \sec \theta_{1}\left(t\right) \left[\tau_{\alpha} \tan \theta_{1}\left(t\right) - \kappa_{\alpha} \sec \theta_{1}\left(t\right)\right] = 0.$$

For $\tau_{\alpha} \tan \theta_1(t) - \kappa_{\alpha} \sec \theta_1(t) = 0$, we find easily that $\tau_{\alpha} \tan \theta_1(t) = \kappa_{\alpha} \sec \theta_1(t)$. Then

$$\frac{\tau_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}} = \frac{\sec \theta_1\left(t\right)}{\tan \theta_1\left(t\right)} = \frac{1}{\sin \theta_1\left(t\right)} = \csc \theta_1\left(t\right) = \frac{\tau_{\alpha}'}{\kappa_{\alpha}'}.$$

So, α is a helix. But, it is contrast to the hypotesis. For $\sec \theta_1(t) = 0$, we write $\frac{\tau'_{\alpha}}{\sqrt{(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2}} = 0$, namely, $\tau'_{\alpha} = 0$ and this is contrast to the hypotesis, too. For $\theta'_1(t) = 0$, then it is clear that $\theta_1(t) = constant$.

 $\tau'_{\alpha} = 0$ and this is contrast to the hypotesis, too. For $\theta'_1(t) = 0$, then it is clear that $\theta_1(t) = constant$. Furthermore $\sin \theta_1(t) = \frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{\tau'_{\alpha}} = c_1$ and c_1 is a constant. If we choose $\frac{b}{a} = c_1$, then there is $a\kappa'_{\alpha} - b\tau'_{\alpha} = 0$. From here, $a\kappa_{\alpha} - b\tau_{\alpha} = c$.

here, $a\kappa_{\alpha} - b\tau_{\alpha} = c$. $Case\ 2$: We assume that $(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 < 0$. In this situation, $\kappa'_{\alpha} \neq 0$. Let $\theta_2(t)$ be a function defined by $sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\tau'_{\alpha}}{\kappa'_{\alpha}}\right)$. Using the equations

$$\sin \theta_2(t) = \frac{\tau'_\alpha}{\kappa'_\alpha}, \cos \theta_2(t) = \frac{\sqrt{(\kappa'_\alpha)^2 - (\tau'_\alpha)^2}}{\kappa'_\alpha}, \\ \tan \theta_2(t) = \frac{\tau'_\alpha}{\sqrt{(\kappa'_\alpha)^2 - (\tau'_\alpha)^2}}, \sec \theta_2(t) = \frac{\kappa'_\alpha}{\sqrt{(\kappa'_\alpha)^2 - (\tau'_\alpha)^2}}$$

we get

$$\theta_{2}'(t) \sec \theta_{2}(t) \left[-\tau_{\alpha} \sec \theta_{2}(t) + \kappa_{\alpha} \tan \theta_{2}(t)\right] = 0$$

Thus, we obtain $a\kappa_{\alpha} - b\tau_{\alpha} = c$. Conversely, if κ_{α} and τ_{α} provides the equation $a\kappa_{\alpha} - b\tau_{\alpha} = c$, then we find $\tau_{\alpha} \left(\frac{\tau'_{\alpha}}{v_{d}}\right)' - \kappa_{\alpha} \left(\frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{v_{d}}\right)' = 0$ from $\left(\frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{v_{d}}\right)' = 0$ and $\left(\frac{\tau'_{\alpha}}{v_{d}}\right)' = 0$. Also, the proof is done for timelike curve with spacelike binormal vector, similarly.

Theorem 4.3. Let α be a unit speed spacelike curve in \mathbb{E}_1^3 with a spacelike binormal vector, $\kappa_{\alpha}, \tau_{\alpha} \neq 0$ and $(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 + (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 \neq 0$. If α is not a helix, then the centrode d of α is a rectifying curve if and only if κ and τ satisfy the equation $a\kappa_{\alpha} - b\tau_{\alpha} = c$ where a, b, c are constants and they provide the conditions $c \neq 0, a^2 + b^2 \neq 0$.

Proof. We assume that $\varepsilon_0 = 1$ and $\varepsilon_2 = 1$. Then, there exists

$$\tau_{\alpha} \left(\frac{\tau_{\alpha}'}{v_d}\right)' + \kappa_{\alpha} \left(\frac{\kappa_{\alpha}'}{v_d}\right)' = 0$$

and $(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 + (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2 \neq 0$. Thus, we get $\kappa'_{\alpha} \neq 0$ or $\tau'_{\alpha} \neq 0$.

Case 1: We assume that $\kappa'_{\alpha} \neq 0$. Let $\gamma_1(t)$ be a function given by $\gamma_1(t) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\tau'_{\alpha}}{\kappa'_{\alpha}}\right)$. Then, using

$$\sin\left(\gamma_{1}\left(t\right)\right) = \frac{\tau_{\alpha}'}{\sqrt{\left(\tau_{\alpha}'\right)^{2} + \left(\kappa_{\alpha}'\right)^{2}}}, \cos\left(\gamma_{1}\left(t\right)\right) = \frac{\kappa_{\alpha}'}{\sqrt{\left(\tau_{\alpha}'\right)^{2} + \left(\kappa_{\alpha}'\right)^{2}}},$$



we get

$$\tau_{\alpha}\cos\left(\gamma_{1}\left(t\right)\right)\gamma_{1}'\left(t\right)-\kappa_{\alpha}\sin\left(\gamma_{1}\left(t\right)\right)\gamma_{1}'\left(t\right)=0$$

Thus, we write $\gamma'_1(t) = 0$ and it is a constant. So, we obtain $a\kappa - b\tau = c$. Since $\frac{\tau_{\alpha}}{\kappa}$ is non-constant, it is $c \neq 0$ and $a^2 + b^2 \neq 0$.

Case 2 : We assume that $\tau'_{\alpha} \neq 0$. Let $\gamma_2(t)$ is a function given by $\gamma_2(t) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\kappa'_{\alpha}}{\tau'_{\alpha}}\right)$. Then, $\tan\left(\gamma_{2}\left(t\right)\right) = \frac{\kappa_{\alpha}'}{\tau_{\alpha}'}$ and using

$$\sin\left(\gamma_{2}\left(t\right)\right) = \frac{\kappa_{\alpha}'}{\sqrt{\left(\tau_{\alpha}'\right)^{2} + \left(\kappa_{\alpha}'\right)^{2}}}, \cos\left(\gamma_{2}\left(t\right)\right) = \frac{\tau_{\alpha}'}{\sqrt{\left(\tau_{\alpha}'\right)^{2} + \left(\kappa_{\alpha}'\right)^{2}}},$$

we get

$$\left(\kappa_{\alpha}\cos\left(\gamma_{2}\left(t\right)\right)-\tau_{\alpha}\sin\left(\gamma_{2}\left(t\right)\right)\right)\gamma_{2}'\left(t\right)=0.$$

It is easy to show that $a\kappa_{\alpha} - b\tau_{\alpha} = c$.

Now, we find the relations between the Frenet-Serret apparatus of the centrode d, which is a rectifying curve, and the Frenet-Serret apparatus of α .

Theorem 4.4. Let α be a unit speed spacelike curve in \mathbb{E}^3_1 with a timelike binormal vector and its Serret-Frenet apparatus be $\{T_{\alpha}, N_{\alpha}, B_{\alpha}, \kappa_{\alpha}, \tau_{\alpha}\}$. The centrode d(t) of $\alpha(t)$ is a rectifying curve.

(1) If d(t) is a spacelike curve, then the Serret-Frenet apparatus $\{T_d, N_d, B_d, \kappa_d, \tau_d\}$ of centrode is given by

$$T_{d} = \frac{-\delta}{\sqrt{1-\hat{c}^{2}}}T_{\alpha} - \frac{\delta\hat{c}}{\sqrt{1-\hat{c}^{2}}}B_{\alpha},$$

$$N_{d} = N_{\alpha},$$

$$B_{d} = \frac{-\delta}{\sqrt{1-\hat{c}^{2}}}B_{\alpha} - \frac{\delta\hat{c}}{\sqrt{1-\hat{c}^{2}}}T_{\alpha},$$

$$\kappa_{d} = \frac{\hat{c}\tau_{\alpha} - \kappa_{\alpha}}{\tau_{\alpha}'(1-\hat{c}^{2})},$$

$$\tau_{d} = \frac{\hat{c}\kappa_{\alpha} - \tau_{\alpha}}{\tau_{\alpha}'(1-\hat{c}^{2})}$$

where δ is the signature of τ'_{α} , $\hat{c} = \frac{b}{a}$ and a, b is defined as in Theorem 4.2. (2) If d(t) is a timelike curve, then the Serret-Frenet apparatus $\{T_d, N_d, B_d, \kappa_d, \tau_d\}$ of centrode is given by

$$T_{d} = \frac{-\delta \overline{c}}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{c}^{2}}} T_{\alpha} - \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{c}^{2}}} B_{\alpha},$$

$$N_{d} = N_{\alpha},$$

$$B_{d} = \frac{-\delta \overline{c}}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{c}^{2}}} B_{\alpha} - \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{c}c^{2}}} T_{\alpha},$$

$$\kappa_{d} = \frac{\tau_{\alpha} - \overline{c}\kappa_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}' \left(1 - \overline{c}^{2}\right)},$$

$$\tau_{d} = \frac{\kappa_{\alpha} - \overline{c}\tau_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}' \left(1 - \overline{c}^{2}\right)}$$

where δ is the signature of κ'_{α} , $\overline{c} = \frac{a}{b}$ and a, b is defined as in Theorem 4.2.



On rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space

Proof. From $a\kappa'_{\alpha} - b\tau'_{\alpha} = 0$, since d(t) is a spacelike rectifying curve and $\tau'_{\alpha} \neq 0$, we write $\kappa'_{\alpha} = \frac{b}{a}\tau'_{\alpha}$. For v_d , we write

$$v_d = \sqrt{|(\tau'_{\alpha})^2 - (\kappa'_{\alpha})^2|} = |\tau'_{\alpha}|\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}$$

where $\hat{c} = \frac{b}{a}$. For the Frenet-Serret apparatus, we give the following:

$$T_d = -\frac{\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \tau'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d} T_\alpha - \frac{\varepsilon_0 \varepsilon_1 \kappa'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d} B_\alpha = -\frac{\tau'_\alpha}{|\tau'_\alpha| \sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} T_\alpha - \frac{\hat{c}\tau'_\alpha}{|\tau'_\alpha| \sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} B_\alpha$$
$$\varepsilon_1^d \kappa_d \upsilon_d N_d = \left(-\frac{\tau'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d}\right)' T_\alpha - \frac{\tau'_\alpha \kappa_\alpha - \kappa'_\alpha \tau_\alpha}{\upsilon_d} N_\alpha - \left(\frac{\kappa'_\alpha}{\upsilon_d}\right)' B_\alpha.$$

Then we get

$$N_{d} = N_{\alpha},$$

$$\kappa_{d} = \frac{-\tau_{\alpha}' \kappa_{\alpha} + \kappa_{\alpha}' \tau_{\alpha}}{\left(\left|\tau_{\alpha}'\right| \sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^{2}}\right)^{2}} = \frac{\hat{c}\tau_{\alpha} - \kappa_{\alpha}}{\tau_{\alpha}' \left(1 - \hat{c}^{2}\right)}$$

Finally, we see easily that

$$B_d = T_d \times N_d = \frac{-\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} B_\alpha - \frac{\hat{c}\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} T_\alpha, -\tau_d \varepsilon_1^d \upsilon_d N_d = \frac{-\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} \left(-\varepsilon_1 \tau_\alpha N_\alpha \right) - \frac{\hat{c}\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} \varepsilon_1 \kappa_\alpha N_\alpha$$

then we have $au_d = rac{\hat{c}\kappa_{lpha} - au_{lpha}}{ au_{lpha}' \left(1 - \hat{c}^2\right)}.$

Theorem 4.5. Let α be a unit speed timelike curve in \mathbb{E}^3 with a spacelike binormal vector. The centrode d(t) of $\alpha(t)$ is a rectifying curve.

(1) If d(t) is a spacelike curve, then the Serret-Frenet apparatus $\{T_d, N_d, B_d, \kappa_d, \tau_d\}$ of centrode is given by

$$T_{d} = \frac{\delta \overline{c}}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{c}^{2}}} T_{\alpha} + \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{c}^{2}}} B_{\alpha},$$

$$N_{d} = N_{\alpha},$$

$$B_{d} = \frac{\delta \overline{c}}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{c}^{2}}} B_{\alpha} + \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{c}^{2}}} T_{\alpha},$$

$$\kappa_{d} = \frac{\overline{c} \kappa_{\alpha} - \tau_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}' \left(1 - \overline{c}^{2}\right)},$$

$$\tau_{d} = \frac{\overline{c} \tau_{\alpha} - \kappa_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}' \left(1 - \overline{c}^{2}\right)}$$

where δ is the signature of κ'_{α} , $\overline{c} = \frac{a}{b}$ and a, b is defined as in Theorem 4.2.



Gülşah AYDIN ŞEKERCİ Sibel SEVİNÇ and Abdilkadir Ceylan ÇÖKEN

(2) If d(t) is a timelike curve, then the Serret-Frenet apparatus $\{T_d, N_d, B_d, \kappa_d, \tau_d\}$ of centrode is given by

$$T_d = \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} T_\alpha + \frac{\delta \hat{c}}{\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} B_\alpha,$$

$$N_d = N_\alpha,$$

$$B_d = \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} B_\alpha + \frac{\delta \hat{c}}{\sqrt{1 - \hat{c}^2}} T_\alpha,$$

$$\kappa_d = \frac{\kappa_\alpha - \hat{c}\tau_\alpha}{\tau'_\alpha (1 - \hat{c}^2)},$$

$$\tau_d = \frac{\tau_\alpha - \hat{c}\kappa_\alpha}{\tau'_\alpha (1 - \hat{c}^2)}$$

where δ is the signature of τ'_{α} , $\hat{c} = \frac{b}{a}$ and a, b is defined as in Theorem 4.2.

Theorem 4.6. Let α be a unit speed spacelike curve in \mathbb{E}_1^3 with a spacelike binormal and the centrode d(t) of $\alpha(t)$ be a rectifying curve.

(1) If $\tau'_{\alpha} \neq 0$, then the Frenet-Serret apparatus of centrode is given by

$$T_{d} = \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1+\hat{c}^{2}}}T_{\alpha} + \frac{\delta\hat{c}}{\sqrt{1+\hat{c}^{2}}}B_{\alpha},$$

$$N_{d} = N_{\alpha},$$

$$B_{d} = \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1+\hat{c}^{2}}}B_{\alpha} - \frac{\delta\hat{c}}{\sqrt{1+\hat{c}^{2}}}T_{\alpha},$$

$$\kappa_{d} = \frac{\kappa_{\alpha} - \hat{c}\tau_{\alpha}}{\tau_{\alpha}'(1+\hat{c}^{2})},$$

$$\tau_{d} = \frac{\tau_{\alpha} + \kappa_{\alpha}\hat{c}}{\tau_{\alpha}'(1+\hat{c}^{2})}$$

where δ is the signature of τ'_{α} , $\hat{c} = \frac{b}{a}$ and a, b is defined as in Theorem 4.3. (2) If $\kappa'_{\alpha} \neq 0$, then the Frenet-Serret apparatus of centrode is given by

$$T_{d} = \frac{\delta \overline{c}}{\sqrt{1 + \overline{c}^{2}}} T_{\alpha} + \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1 + \overline{c}^{2}}} B_{\alpha},$$

$$N_{d} = N_{\alpha},$$

$$B_{d} = \frac{\delta \overline{c}}{\sqrt{1 + \overline{c}^{2}}} B_{\alpha} - \frac{\delta}{\sqrt{1 + \overline{c}^{2}}} T_{\alpha},$$

$$\kappa_{d} = \frac{\overline{c} \kappa_{\alpha} - \tau_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}' \left(1 + \overline{c}^{2}\right)},$$

$$\tau_{d} = \frac{\overline{c} \tau_{\alpha} + \kappa_{\alpha}}{\kappa_{\alpha}' \left(1 + \overline{c}^{2}\right)}$$

where δ is the signature of τ'_{α} , $\overline{c} = \frac{a}{b}$ and a, b is defined as in Theorem 4.3.

References

[1] B.Y. CHEN, When does the position vector of a space curve always lie in its rectifying plane?, *Am. Math. Mon.*, **110**(2003), 147–152.



On rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space

- [2] B.Y. CHEN AND F. DILLEN, Rectifying curves as centrodes and extremal curves, *Bulletin of the Inst. Math. Academia Sinica*, **33**(2005), 77–90.
- [3] S. DESHMUKH, B.Y. CHEN AND S.H. ALSHAMMARI, On rectifying curves in Euclidean 3-space, *Turkish J. Math.*, **42**(2018), 609–620.
- [4] K. İLARSLAN AND E. NESOVIC, On rectifying curves as centrodes and extremal curves in the Minkowski 3-spaces, *Novi Sad J. Math.*, 37(2007), 53–64.
- [5] K. İLARSLAN, E. NESOVIC AND M.P. TORGASEV, Some characterizations of rectifying curves in the Minkowski 3-spaces, *Novi Sad J. Math.*, **33**(2003), 23–32.
- [6] W. KUHNEL, Differential Geometry: Curves-Surfaces-Manifolds, American Mathematical Society, USA, (1999).
- [7] B. O'NEILL, Semi Riemann Geometry with Applications to Relativity, Academic Press, London, (1983).
- [8] B. YILMAZ, İ. GÖK AND Y. YAYLI, Extended rectifying curves in Minkowski 3-space, Adv. Appl. Clifford Algebras, 26(2016), 861–872.
- [9] A. YÜCESAN, N. AYYILDIZ AND A.C. ÇÖKEN, On rectifying dual space curves, *Rev. Mat. Complut.*, 20(2007), 497–506.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.



MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK

Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 194–205. http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/003

Disjunctive total domination in some tree networks

VECDİ AYTAÇ *1 and Tufan Turaci 2

¹ Faculty of Engineering, Department of Computer Engineering, Ege University, 35100 Izmir, Turkey.

² Faculty of Engineering, Department of Computer Engineering, Pamukkale University, 20160 Denizli, Turkey.

Received 12 June 2021; Accepted 28 August 2021

Abstract. Networking has been an essential field of multidisciplinary study, including computational theory, mathematics, social sciences, computer science, and other theoretical and applied sciences. The vulnerability determines the network's resistance to interruption of information flow after the breakdown of particular stations or transmission connections. Recently, new vulnerability parameter namely the disjunctive total domination number has been defined by Henning and Naicker [14]. This measure finds the critical vertices with an important position in the graph. In this context, we consider and compute exact formulae for the disjunctive total domination number in some tree networks. **AMS Subject Classifications**: 05C69, 68M10, 68R10.

Keywords: Network Design and Communication, Complex Networks, Disjunctive total domination number, Trees.

Contents

1	Introduction	194
2	Disjunctive Total Domination Numbers of Some Trees	195
3	Conclusion	203

1. Introduction

The connected graph can model the network, the vertex in the graph represents a network node, and the edge represents a contact connection between the two nodes [7, 16]. There are many parameters in graph theory for network analysis and to determine some properties of the network. Graph theory techniques facilitate representation and analysis during a vulnerability assessment of complex networks. The theory is based on a set of measurements that evaluate networks and include graph vulnerability parameters. The proposed solutions for the network's vulnerability were rooted in the graph theoretical principles, especially the concepts of domination [19].

Theory of domination is one of the most important branches of graph vulnerability, which has wide application in network designings. It has a wide variety of uses in many areas, such as computer science, communication networks, transportation networks, biological and social networks, operations research, chemistry, economics, engineering, and applied mathematics; the principle of domination has recently become the center of graph theory research activity. This is largely due to a variety of new parameters that can be developed from the basic definition of domination [10, 14, 15]. Disjunctive total domination is the new domination parameter defined recently. Henning and Naicker [14] defined the disjunctive total domination as a relaxation of total domination.

A set $S \subseteq V(G)$ is a *dominating set* if every vertex in V(G) - S is adjacent to at least one vertex in S. The minimum cardinality taken over all dominating sets of G is called the *domination number* of G and is denoted

^{*}Corresponding author. Email address: vecdi.aytac@ege.edu.tr (Vecdi Aytaç), tturaci@pau.edu.tr (Tufan Turacı)

Disjunctive total domination in some tree networks

by $\gamma(G)$ [3, 10]. A *total dominating set*, abbreviated a TD-set, of a graph G, with no isolated vertex is a set S of vertices of G such that every vertex in V(G) is adjacent to at least one vertex in S. The *total domination number* of G, denoted by $\gamma_t(G)$, is the minimum cardinality of a TD-set of G [3, 15]. Let $S \subseteq V(G)$. The set S can be the *disjunctive total dominating set* of the graph G if and only if it satisfies any of the following properties. For every vertex $v \in V(G)$;

(i) v is adjacent to a vertex of S,

(ii) at least two vertices at a distance of 2 from the vertex v must be in the set S.

The disjunctive total dominating set of the graph G is briefly called DDT-set. The disjunctive total domination number of G is the minimum cardinality of a DTD-set of G and denoted by $\gamma_t^d(G)$. A DTD-set of cardinality $\gamma_t^d(G)$ is called a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set. Clearly, every TD-set is a DTD-set, furthermore the result $\gamma_t^d(G) \leq \gamma_t(G)$ is obtained in [12–14]. This parameter is studied on grids, trees, permutation graphs, claw-free graphs, shadow distance graph of some special graphs and it is applied on some graph modifications such as bondage and subdivision [1, 2, 12–14].

We consider the disjunctive total domination number as a metric for network vulnerability. In this model, we find the critical vertices with an important position in the graph. Since disjunctive total domination number is considered to be a reasonable measure for the vulnerability of graphs, it is of particular interest to evaluate the disjunctive total domination number of different classes of graphs. Suppose one can break a more complex network into smaller networks, then under some conditions. In that case, the optimization problem's solutions on the smaller networks can be combined to solve the optimization problem on the larger network. Thus, calculation of the disjunctive total domination number for simple graph types is important.

For notation and graph theory terminology, we in general follow [10, 19]. Specifically, let G = (V(G), E(G))be a simple undirected graph with vertex set V(G) and edge set E(G). The set of all adjacent vertices to vertex $v \in V(G)$ in G is called neighborhood and denoted by $N_G(v)$ or N(v). The close neighborhood of this vertex is defined as $N_G(v) \cup \{v\}$ and denoted by $N_G[v]$ or N[v]. The other basic parameter for graphs is the degree of vertex $v \in V(G)$, which is defined as the number of vertices in $N_G(v)$ and denoted by deg(v). Assume that the vertices u and v belong to the graph G. For these vertices, d(u, v) is defined as the distance of the shortest path between these vertices. Furthermore, diam(G) is defined as the diameter of G, and it is the highest distance value within the vertices of G. $\Delta(G) = max\{deg(v)|v \in V(G)\}$ and $\delta(G) = min\{deg(v)|v \in V(G)\}$ represent the maximum and minimum degree, respectively. The vertex with deg(v) = 1 is said to be a pendant vertex or leaf vertex. The vertex adjacent to the pendant vertex is called the support vertex.

Now, we make use of the following known theorems in our results.

Theorem 1.1. [14] For $n \ge 3$, $\gamma_t^d(C_n) = \frac{2n}{5}$ if $n \equiv 0 \pmod{5}$; and $\gamma_t^d(C_n) = \left\lceil \frac{2(n+1)}{5} \right\rceil$, otherwise. **Theorem 1.2.** [14] For $n \ge 3$, $\gamma_t^d(P_n) = \left\lceil \frac{2(n+1)}{5} \right\rceil + 1$ if $n \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$; and $\gamma_t^d(P_n) = \left\lceil \frac{2(n+1)}{5} \right\rceil$, otherwise.

Lemma 1.3. [14] If v is a support vertex in a graph G with exactly one neighbor w that is not a leaf, then there is a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set that contains v. Further if deg(w) = 2, then there is a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set that contains both v and w.

2. Disjunctive Total Domination Numbers of Some Trees

In this section, the distinctive total dominance numbers of certain tree-type networks such as the double comet graph, the double star graph, the comet graph, the generalized caterpillars, the comb graph, the thorn graph P_n^* , the binomial tree and the complete k-ary tree are computed and exact formulae are presented.

Definition 2.1. [8] The double star graph S(x, y), where $x, y \ge 0$, is the graph consisting of the union of two star graphs $K_{1,x}$ and $K_{1,y}$ together with an edge joining their centers.

Theorem 2.2. If $G \cong S(x, y)$ of order x + y, where $x, y \ge 0$, then, $\gamma_t^d(G) = 2$.



Vecdi AYTAÇ and Tufan TURACI

Proof. Note that $V(G) = V(K_{1,x}) \cup V(K_{1,y})$. Furthermore, let u_1 and u_2 be the central vertices of $K_{1,x}$ and $K_{1,y}$, respectively. It is easily seen that $deg(x_i) = deg(y_i) = 1$ for every vertices x_i and y_i , where $x_i \in V(K_{1,x})$ and $y_i \in V(K_{1,y})$, $deg(u_1) = x + 1$ and $deg(u_2) = y + 1$. If a DTD-set of G is considered S, then taking u_1 and u_2 to the set S yields $\gamma_t^d(G) \leq 2$. Furthermore, we have $\gamma_t^d(G) \geq 2$ for any graph G by the definition of disjunctive total domination number. So, $\gamma_t^d(G) \geq 2$. As a consequence, by combining the lower and upper bounds, we obtain $\gamma_t^d(G) = 2$.

Definition 2.3. [4] The comet graph C(t, r) is the graph obtained by identifying one end of the path P_t with the center of the star graph $K_{1,r}$. This graph is illustrated in Figure 1.



Figure 1: The comet graph C(t, r).

Theorem 2.4. If
$$G \cong C(t,r)$$
 of order $t+r$, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = \begin{cases} \left\lceil \frac{2(t+1)}{5} \right\rceil + 1 \text{ , if } t \equiv 0, 1, 4(mod5); \\ \\ \left\lceil \frac{2(t+1)}{5} \right\rceil & \text{, otherwise.} \end{cases}$

Proof. Note that $V(G) = V(P_{t-1}) \cup V(K_{1,r})$. Furthermore, $V(P_{t-1}) = \{u_2, u_3, ..., u_t\}$ and $V(K_{1,r}) = \{u_1, v_1, ..., v_r\}$, where u_1 is the center vertex. Suppose S is a DTD-set in G. By Lemma 1.3, u_1 must be in S. Thus, all vertices v_i and u_2 are disjunctively totally dominated by the vertex u_1 . The disjunctive total undominated vertices by S are the vertices of the path graph with (t-1) vertices. So, the rest of the proof has to be made similar to the proof of Theorem 1.2. In this case, if $t \equiv 0, 1, 4(mod5)$, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = |S| = \lceil 2(t+1)/5 \rceil + 1$, while if $t \equiv 2, 3(mod5)$, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = |S| = \lceil 2(t+1)/5 \rceil$ are obtained.

Definition 2.5. [5] The graph obtained by adding x and y vertices, which are pendant, to the end vertices of the path graph with n - x - y vertices is called double comet DC(n, x, y). For $x, y \ge 1$ and $n \ge x + y + 2$ the double comet DC(n, x, y) is one of the tree graphs. DC(n, x, y) is a graph with n vertices, x + y of which is leaves. This graph is illustrated in Figure 2.



Figure 2: The double comet graph DC(n, x, y).



Disjunctive total domination in some tree networks

Theorem 2.6. If $G \cong DC(n, x, y)$ with $x, y \ge 2$ and $n \ge x + y + 3$, then

$$\gamma_t^d(G) = \begin{cases} \left\lceil \frac{2(n-x-y+1)}{5} \right\rceil + 2 \text{, if } (n-x-y) \equiv 4(mod5); \\ \left\lceil \frac{2(n-x-y+1)}{5} \right\rceil \text{, if } (n-x-y) \equiv 2(mod5); \\ \left\lceil \frac{2(n-x-y+1)}{5} \right\rceil + 1 \text{, otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Proof. Note that $V(G) = V(P_{n-x-y-2}) \cup V(K_{1,x}) \cup V(K_{1,y})$ in which $V(P_{n-x-y-2}) = \{u_2, u_3, ..., u_{n-x-y-1}\}, V(K_{1,x}) = \{u_1, x_1, x_2, ..., x_x\}$ and $V(K_{1,y}) = \{u_{n-x-y}, y_1, y_2, ..., y_y\}$. Suppose S is a DTD-set in G. By Lemma 1.3, the vertices u_1 and u_{n-x-y} must be taken to the set S. Thus the vertices not disjunctively totally dominated by the set S form the path graph. As in the proof of Theorem 1.2, the construction of the set S is continued. In this case, if $(n-x-y) \equiv 4(mod5)$, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = |S| = \lceil (2(n-x-y+1)/5) \rceil + 2$; if $(n-x-y) \equiv 2(mod5)$, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = |S| = \lceil (2(n-x-y+1)/5) \rceil + 1$ are obtained.

Definition 2.7. [17] The graph obtained by joining a pendant edge at each vertex of a path P_n is called a comb graph and is denoted by $P_n \Box K_1$. The graph $P_5 \Box K_1$ is illustrated in Figure 3.



Figure 3: The comb graph $P_5 \Box K_1$.

Theorem 2.8. If $G \cong P_n \Box K_1$ of order 2n, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = 4 + |(n-4)/2|$.

Proof. Note that $V(G) = \{u_i, v_i \mid 1 \le i \le n\}$ and $E(G) = \{u_i v_i \mid 1 \le i \le n\} \cup \{u_i u_{i+1} \mid 1 \le i \le n-1\}$. It is obvious that $|V(G)| = 2n, |E(G)| = 2n - 1, deg(v_i) = 1$ where $i \in \{1, ..., n\}, deg(u_1) = deg(u_n) = 2$ and $deg(u_i) = 3$ where $i \in \{2, ..., n-1\}$. We set the upper limits to the disjunctive total domination number of G, first. Suppose D is a DTD-set in G. According to degree of vertices of G, some u_i -vertices $(i \in \{2, ..., n-1\})$ must be taken to the set D. To disjunctively totally dominate the vertices v_1 and v_n , it must be $\{u_1, u_n\} \subseteq D$. Since $N_G(u_1) = \{v_1, u_2\}$ and $N_G(u_n) = \{v_n, u_{n-1}\}, \{u_2, u_{n-1}\} \subset D$ should be to disjunctively totally dominate the vertices u_1 and u_n . Thus, the set D is a follows:

$$D = \bigcup_{i=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n-4}{2} \rfloor + 1} \{u_{2i+4}\} \cup \{u_1, u_2, u_{n-1}, u_n\}.$$

Clearly, the set D is a DTD-set for every $n \ge 5$. Furthermore, we get $|D| = 4 + \lfloor (n-4)/2 \rfloor$, also is an upper bound. Thus, $\gamma_t^d(G) \le 4 + \lfloor (n-4)/2 \rfloor$ is obtained.

To prove the inverse of equality, let the set T be a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set of G. Assume that the two vertices are adjacent in T. Furthermore, the set S is as follows:

$$S = \bigcup_{i=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{3} \rfloor - 1} \left\{ u_{3i+1}, u_{3i+2} \right\}$$



Vecdi AYTAÇ and Tufan TURACI

, where $S \subseteq T$. If $n \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$, we have $T = S \cup \{v_{n-1}, v_n\}$; if $n \equiv 0 \pmod{3}$, we have $T = S \cup \{v_n\}$ and if $n \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$, we have T = S. Thus, we obtain $|T| = 2 \lfloor n/3 \rfloor + 2$ for $n \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$, $|T| = 2 \lfloor n/3 \rfloor + 1$ for $n \equiv 0 \pmod{3}$ and $|T| = 2 \lfloor n/3 \rfloor$ for $n \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$. These results contradict the previous upper bound for $n \geq 7$.

Furthermore, we get $\{u_1, u_2, u_{n-1}, u_n\} \subset T$. However, apart from these vertices, no two vertices in T should be adjacent to each other. If the distance between the two vertices is at least three, all vertices in G cannot be disjunctively totally dominated. So, the distance between two vertices must be exactly 2. Thus, it is easy to see that $\gamma_t^d(G) \ge 4 + \lfloor (n-4)/2 \rfloor$, also we have $\gamma_t^d(G) = 4 + \lfloor (n-4)/2 \rfloor$.

Corollary 2.9. If $G \cong P_n \Box K_1$ of order 2n, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = 4 + \gamma(P_{n-4})$.

Definition 2.10. [9] Let $p_1, p_2, ..., p_n$ be non-negative integers and the graph G be such a graph, where |V(G)| = n. The thorn graph of the graph G with parameters $p_1, p_2, ..., p_n$ is obtained by attaching p_i new vertices of degree one to the vertex u_i of the graph G, where $i = \overline{1, n}$. The thorn graph of the graph G will be denoted by G^* or if the respective parameters need to be specified, by $G^*(p_1, p_2, ..., p_n)$. The graph $P_7^*(2, 1, 1, 3, 2, 1, 4)$ is illustrated in Figure 4.



Figure 4: The thorn graph $P_7^*(2, 1, 1, 3, 2, 1, 4)$.

Theorem 2.11. If $G \cong P_n^*$ is a thorn graph of P_n with $p_i \ge 2$, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = \gamma_t^d(P_n \Box K_1)$.

Proof. The proof is quite close to that of Theorem 2.8, so we omit it.

Definition 2.12. [18] $C_{(t,0)}P_n$ is a generalized Caterpillar obtained from the path graph P_n by attaching t vertices of degree one to each vertex of degree two of P_n . The tree $C_{(t,1)}P_n$ is a generalized Caterpillar obtained from the path graph P_n by attaching m vertices of degree two to each vertex of degree two of P_n . The graph $C_{(3,0)}P_7$ and $C_{(3,1)}P_7$ are illustrated in Figure 5.



Theorem 2.13. Let $G \cong C_{(t,0)}P_n$ be generalized caterpillar graph with (n + t(n-2))-vertices. Then, for $t \ge 2$ and $p_i = t$, $\gamma_t^d(G) = \gamma_t^d(P_{n-2}^*)$.

Proof. The proof is quite close to that of Theorem 2.8, so we omit it.


Disjunctive total domination in some tree networks

Theorem 2.14. Let $G \cong C_{(t,1)}P_n$ be generalized caterpillar graph with (n+t(n-2))-vertices. Then, for $t \ge 3$, $\gamma_t^d(G) = t(n-2)$.

Proof. The graph G has (n+t(n-2))-vertices. Let $V(G) = V_1 \cup V_2 \cup V_3$, where $V_1 = \{u_i \in V(P_n) | 1 \le i \le n\}$, $V_2 = \{v_i \in (V(G) - V(P_n)) | deg(v_i) = 2 \text{ and } 1 \le i \le t(n-2)\}$ and $V_3 = \{w_i \in (V(G) - V(P_n)) | deg(w_i) = 1 \text{ and } 1 \le i \le t(n-2)\}$. Clearly, we have $deg(u_1) = deg(u_n) = 1$ and $deg(u_i) = 2$ for the vertices of V_1 , where $i \in \{2, ..., n-1\}$. Suppose S is a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set of G. Since $deg(w_i) = 1$ for each vertex $w_i \in V_3$, the all vertices of V_2 must be taken to the set S. Therefore, each vertex of V_1 is disjunctively totally dominated by the set S. Thus, all vertices in G are disjunctively totally dominated by S. It is easily seen that the set S is unique and there is no other set of $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set. Note that $|V_2| = t(n-2)$. Then, |S| = t(n-2). Hence, we get $\gamma_t^d(G) = t(n-2)$. Thus, the proof holds.

Definition 2.15. [6] The binomial tree B_n with root R is the tree defines as follows:

- *i.* If n = 0, then $B_n = B_0 = R$, i.e., the binomial tree of order zero consists of a single root R.
- *ii.* If n > 0, then $B_n = R, B_0, B_1, \ldots, B_{n-1}$, *i.e.*, the binomial tree of order n > 0 comprises the root R and n binomial subtrees $B_0, B_1, \ldots, B_{n-1}$.

In Figures 6 and 7, the binomial trees B_4 and B_5 are illustrated.



Figure 6: The binomial tree B_4 .



Figure 7: The binomial tree B_5 .

Theorem 2.16. If $G \cong B_n$ of order 2^n with $n \ge 5$, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = 7(2^{n-4})$.

Proof. The binomial tree B_n has 2^n -vertices. It is clear that $\gamma_t^d(B_0) = 1$, $\gamma_t^d(B_1) = \gamma_t^d(B_2) = 2$, and $\gamma_t^d(B_3) = 4$ for $n \leq 3$. Let n = 4, and let S_1 be a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set of B_4 . It is easily seen that $S_1 = \{v_2, v_3, v_6, v_{10}, v_{11}, v_{14}, v_{15}\}$ (see Figure 6). Then, we get $\gamma_t^d(B_4) = 7$.

Suppose S is a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set of B_5 . Since B_5 has two copies of B_4 , the vertices $\{v_2, v_3, v_6, v_{10}, v_{11}, v_{14}, v_{15}\}$ and $\{v_2', v_3', v_6', v_{10}', v_{11}', v_{14}', v_{15}'\}$ in the first and second copies of B_4 , respectively, must be taken to the set S



Vecdi AYTAÇ and Tufan TURACI

(see Figure 7). Thus, we have $S = \{v_2, v_3, v_6, v_{10}, v_{11}, v_{14}, v_{15}, v'_2, v'_3, v'_6, v'_{10}, v'_{11}, v'_{14}, v'_{15}\}$. Then, we obtain $\gamma_t^d(B_5) = 2\gamma_t^d(B_4) = 14$. With the same thought, $\gamma_t^d(B_6) = 2\gamma_t^d(B_5) = 28$ and $\gamma_t^d(B_7) = 2\gamma_t^d(B_6) = 56$ are obtained. If this continue for $n \ge 5$, we get the following recurrence formula:

$$\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 2\gamma_t^d(B_{n-1}) \text{ for } n \ge 5.$$
(1)

From this formula, we have:

$$\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 2\gamma_t^d(B_{n-1}) = 2(2\gamma_t^d(B_{n-2})) = 2^2\gamma_t^d(B_{n-1}) = \dots = 2^{n-4}\gamma_t^d(B_4).$$

Furthermore, we obtain

$$\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 2^i \gamma_t^d(B_{n-i}), i \in \{1, 2, n-1\}.$$
(2)

This equality can be seen by the induction method. Let i = 1.

Thus, we have $\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 2\gamma_t^d(B_{n-1})$, also is clear by Eq. (1). We prove this statement with induction on *i*. When i = 1, we have $\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 2^i \gamma_t^d(B_{n-i})$ and via the Eq. (1), this is valid. We suppose that the result is true for i = k and prove it for i = k + 1. By induction hypothesis and Eq. (1), we get

$$\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 2^k \gamma_t^d(B_{n-k}) = 2^k (2\gamma_t^d(B_{n-k-1})) = 2^{k+1} \gamma_t^d(B_{n-k-1}).$$

This means the claim is valid where i = k + 1. Hence, we get

 $\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 2^i \gamma_t^d(B_{n-i})$, where $1 \le i \le n-4$, $\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 7$.

Since the first case obtained when i = n - 4 is n = 4, the following is obtained from Eq. (2).

 $\gamma_t^d(B_n) = 2^{n-4}(B_{n-(n-4)}) = 2^{n-4}(\gamma_t^d(B_4)) = 7(2^{n-4}).$

Definition 2.17. [6] The complete k-ary tree of height h, T_h^k , is a rooted tree with each leaf having the same depth and each vertex except the leaves in degree k. T_h^k in which every non-leaf vertex has exactly k-children and the distance from the root to each leaf is exactly h. The complete k-ary tree for $k \ge 2$ has $\frac{k^{h+1}-1}{k-1}$ vertices and $\frac{k^{h+1}-1}{k-1} - 1 = \frac{k^{h+1}-k}{k-1}$ edges. The complete binary tree is the complete k-ary tree with k = 2. Figure 8 shows an example of a complete k-ary tree T_4^2 (k = 2 and h = 4). In Figure 8, the value of L expresses the depth of each vertex.



Figure 8: The complete 2-ary tree T_4^2 (k = 2 and h = 4).



Disjunctive total domination in some tree networks

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Theorem 2.18. If $G \cong T_h^k \text{ of order } \frac{k^{h+1}-1}{k-1}, \text{ where } h \ge 4 \text{ and } k \ge 3, \text{ then} \\ & \left\{ \begin{cases} \left(\sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} k^{4i+3}\right) + 1 \ , h \equiv 0 \pmod{4}; \\ \left(\sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} k^{4i+4}\right) + 2 \ , h \equiv 1 \pmod{4}; \\ \left(\sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} k^{4i+4}\right) + 2 \ , h \equiv 1 \pmod{4}; \\ \left(\sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} k^{4i+1}\right) \qquad , h \equiv 2 \pmod{4}; \\ \left(\sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} k^{4i+2}\right) \qquad , h \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{aligned} \end{aligned}$$$

Proof. By the definition of complete k-ary tree T_h^k , we know that there are $k^0, k^1, ..., k^h$ vertices in the levels $0^{th}, 1^{th}, ..., h^{th}$, respectively. Suppose S is a DTD-set in T_h^k for $h \ge 4$ and $k \ge 3$. We know that the vertices that in the level h^{th} are called leaf vertices. Since the degree of each leaf vertex is 1, the set S must include support vertices in the level $(h-1)^{th}$. Furthermore, the distance between each vertex in S and at least two vertices in S is two. Thus, the vertices which are in the levels h^{th} , $(h-2)^{th}$ and $(h-3)^{th}$ are disjunctively totally dominated by the set S. Then, the vertices that in the level $(h-5)^{th}$ must be added to the set S. It is easy to see that distance of the any two vertices which are in distinct levels is four. With the same thought, the set will be occurred. But, we have four cases according to h.

Case 1.
$$h \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$$
.
Let $L = \sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} \{4i + 3\}$, where the elements of L is the levels of tree T_h^k . Let the set S includes the vertices

which are in the levels in *L*. Thus, we get $|S| = \sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} k^{4i+3}$. But the root vertex of T_h^k is not disjunctively totally dominated by *S*. If any vertex in the first level is added to *S*, then root vertex is disjunctively totally dominated. So, $\gamma_t^d(T_h^k) = |S| = \left(\sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} k^{4i+3}\right) + 1$ is obtained.

Case 2.
$$h \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$$
.
Let $L = \sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1} \{4i + 4\}$, where the elements of L is the levels of tree T_h^k . Let the set S includes the vertices $\lceil h/4 \rceil - 1$

which are in the levels in *L*. Thus, we get $|S| = \sum_{i=0}^{\lfloor n/4 \rfloor - 1} k^{4i+4}$. But the root vertex and the vertices which are in first level of T_h^k are not disjunctively totally dominated by *S*. If any vertex in the first level and the root vertex are added to *S*, then all vertices of T_h^k are disjunctively totally dominated by *S*. So, $\gamma_t^d(T_h^k) = |S| = \left(\sum_{i=0}^{\lfloor h/4 \rfloor - 1} k^{4i+4}\right) + 2$ is obtained.



Vecdi AYTAÇ and Tufan TURACI

 $\begin{aligned} & \textit{Case 3. } h \equiv 2(mod4). \\ & \text{Let } L = \sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil -1} \{4i+1\}, \text{ where the elements of } L \text{ is the levels of tree } T_h^k. \text{ Let the set } S \text{ includes the vertices} \\ & \text{which are in the levels in } L. \text{ Thus, we get } |S| = \sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil -1} k^{4i+1}. \text{ Clearly, all vertices of } T_h^k \text{ are disjunctively} \\ & \text{totally dominated by } S. \text{ So, } \gamma_t^d(T_h^k) = |S| = \sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil -1} k^{4i+1} \text{ is obtained.} \\ & \textit{Case 4. } h \equiv 3(mod4). \\ & \text{Let } L = \sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil -1} \{4i+2\}, \text{ where the elements of } L \text{ is the levels of tree } T_h^k. \text{ This case is similar to the } Case 3. \\ & \text{So, } \gamma_t^d(T_h^k) = |S| = \sum_{i=0}^{\lceil h/4 \rceil -1} k^{4i+2} \text{ is obtained.} \\ & \text{Thus, the proof of theorem is completed by the } Cases 1, 2, 3 \text{ and } 4. \end{aligned}$

Theorem 2.19. If $G \cong T_h^k$ of order $\frac{k^{h+1}-1}{k-1}$, where $h \leq 3$ and $k \geq 3$, then $\gamma_t^d(G) = k^{h-1}$.

Proof. Suppose S is a DTD-set in T_h^k . Due to leaf vertices of T_h^k , the all support vertices must be taken to the set S. It is clear that all vertices of T_h^k are disjunctively totally dominated by S. So, we get $\gamma_t^d(T_h^k) = k^{h-1}$.

Theorem 2.20. If $G \cong T_h^2$ is a complete 2-ary tree of order $2^{h+1} - 1$, where $h \ge 4$, then

$$\gamma^d_t(G) = \begin{cases} \frac{2(2^{h}-1)}{3} & \text{, if } t \equiv 0 (mod2); \\ \\ 2^{h-1} + 2^{h-3} & \text{, otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Proof. By the definition of complete k-ary tree T_h^k , we know that T_h^2 consists of 2 copies of T_{h-1}^2 , also T_{h-1}^2 consists of 2 copies of T_{h-2}^2 , etc. Clearly, we get $T_1^2 \cong S_{1,2}$, where $S_{1,2}$ is a star graph. It is easily seen that $\gamma_t^d(T_1^2) = 2$. Let D be a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set of T_h^2 for $h \leq 3$. To be disjunctively totally dominated each vertex of T_h^2 , all vertices which are in $(h-1)^{th}$ level must be added to the set D. Thus, all vertices except the vertices in D are disjunctively totally dominated. Therefore, the vertex which in level zero must be added to D. So, all vertices of T_h^2 are disjunctively totally dominated by the set D. Clearly, $|D| = 2^{h-1} + 1$, also the set D is the minimum DTD-set. As a result, $\gamma_t^d(T_h^2) = 2^{h-1} + 1$ for $h \leq 3$.

Let $h \ge 4$, and let S_1 be a $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set of T_4^2 . Clearly, the set S_1 has the vertices of v_1, v_2, v_i , where $i \in \{7, 8, ..., 14\}$ in the Figure 8. So, all vertices in T_4^2 and S_1 are disjunctively totally dominated by S_1 . It is easy to see that $|S_1| = 2^3 + 2 = 10$. Hence, $\gamma_t^d(T_4^2) = 10$. Let S be $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set of T_5^2 . Since the tree T_5^2 has k-copies of T_4^2 , all vertices which are correspond to vertices of S_1 in all copies of T_4^2 must be added to the set S. That is, $S = \bigcup_{j=1}^2 S_1$. Thus, we get $|S| = 2|S_1|$. So, $\gamma_t^d(T_5^2) = 2(\gamma_t^d(T_4^2)) = 2^4 + 2^2$ is obtained.

With the same thought, we consider the tree T_6^2 . If the vertices of $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set of the tree T_5^2 which is copy of T_6^2 , all vertices of T_6^2 are not disjunctively totally dominated. Because, the vertices which are in the DTD-set are not dominated. To disjunctively total dominate of these vertices, the vertices which are in 1-level must be taken in to the $\gamma_t^d(G)$ -set. Thus, we obtain $\gamma_t^d(T_6^2) = 2(\gamma_t^d(T_5^2)) + 2$. Furthermore, we get following recursive formulas for $\gamma_t^d(T_h^2)$, where $h \ge 5$:



Disjunctive total domination in some tree networks

$$\gamma^d_t(T^2_h) = \begin{cases} 2\gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-1}) + 2 \text{ , if } h \equiv 0 (mod2); \\ \\ \gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-1}) \text{ , otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Let h = 2k + 1, where $k \in Z^+$. Then we have

$$\gamma_t^d(T_h^2) = 2\gamma_t^d(T_{h-1}^2) = 2(2\gamma_t^d(T_{h-2}^2)) = 2^2\gamma_t^d(T_{h-2}^2) = \dots = 2^{n-4}(T_4^2).$$

Let h = 2k, where $k \in Z^+$. Then we have

$$\begin{split} \gamma^d_t(T^2_h) &= 2\gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-1}) + 2 \\ &= 2(2\gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-2}) + 2) = 2^2(\gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-2})) + 2 \\ &= 2^2(2\gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-3}) + 2 = 2^3(\gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-3})) + 2^3 + 2 \\ &\cdot \\ \cdot \\ &\cdot \\ &\cdot \\ &= 2^{h-4}\gamma^d_t(T^2_4) + 2^{h-5} + 2^{h-7} + \ldots + 2^{h-(h-3)} + 2^{h-(h-1)} \end{split}$$

Clearly, we get following result for $1 \le i \le h - 4$.

$$\begin{split} \gamma^d_t(T^2_h) &= 2^i \gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-i}), \text{if } h = 2k+1; \\ \gamma^d_t(T^2_h) &= 2^i \gamma^d_t(T^2_{h-i}) + \sum_{i=0}^{\frac{h-4}{2}-1} 2^{2i+1}, \text{if } h = 2k. \end{split}$$

If we use geometric series for h = 2k, then we have $\gamma_t^d(T_h^2) = 2^i \gamma_t^d(T_{h-i}^2) + 2\left(\frac{2^i-1}{2^2-1}\right)$.

These equalities can be proved by induction method, also remaining of the proof is similar to the proof of Theorem 2.16. So, the remaining of proof is omitted. Thus, the proof holds.

3. Conclusion

Various measures to determine the network robustness were suggested in the literature, and a number of graphtheoretical parameters were used to assess network reliability. We have discussed the disjunctive total domination number for some tree networks in this work. Suppose one can break a more complex network into smaller networks, then under some conditions. In that case, the optimization problem's solutions on the smaller networks can be combined to solve the optimization problem on the larger network. Thus, calculation of the disjunctive total domination number for simple graph types is important.



Vecdi AYTAÇ and Tufan TURACI

References

- C. ÇIFTÇI, Disjunctive Total Domination of Some Shadow Distance Graphs, *Journal of Mathematics and Applications*, 3(2)(2020), 185–193.
- [2] C. ÇIFTÇI AND V. AYTAÇ, Disjunctive total domination subdivision number of graphs, *Fund. Inform.*, 174(1)(2020), 15–26.
- [3] C. ÇIFTÇI AND A. AYTAÇ, Porous Exponential Domination in Harary Graphs, Mathematical Notes, 107(2)(2020), 231–237.
- [4] K.S. BAGGA, L.W. BEINEKE, W.D. GODDARD, M.J. LIPMAN AND R.E.PIPPERT, A survey of Integrity, Disc. Appl. Math., 37-38(1992), 13–28.
- [5] M. CYGAN, M. PILIPCZUK AND R. SKREKOVSKI, Relation between randic index and average distance of trees, *MATCH Comm. in Math. and in Com. Chem.*, **66**(2011), 605–612.
- [6] T.CORMEN, C.E. LEISERSON AND R.L. RIVEST, Introduction to algorithms, *The MIT Press*, Fourth edition(1990).
- [7] H. FRANK AND I.T. FRISCH, Analysis and design of survivable Networks, *IEEE Transactions on Communications Technology*, 18(5)(1970), 501–519.
- [8] J.W.GROSSMAN, F. HARARY. AND M. KLAWE, Generalized ramsey theory for graphs, x: double star graphs, Disc. Math., 28(3)(1979), 247–254.
- [9] I. GUTMAN, Distance of Thorny Graphs, *Publications De L'institut Mathematique Nouvelle serie*, 63(77)(1998), 31–36.
- [10] T.W. HAYNES, S.T. HEDETNIEMI AND P.J. SLATER, Fundamentals of domination in graphs, *Marcel Dekker Inc., New York*,(1998).
- [11] T. TURACI AND M. OKTEN, Vulnerability of Mycielski Graphs via Residual Closeness, Ars Combinatoria, 118(2015), 419–427.
- [12] M.A. HENNING AND V. NAICKER, Graphs with large disjunctive total domination number, *Discrete Math. Theoret. Comput. Sci.*, **17**(2015), 255–282.
- [13] M.A. HENNING AND V. NAICKER, Bounds on the Disjunctive Total Domination Number of a Tree, *Discus. Math. Graph Theory*, **36**(2016), 153–171.
- [14] M.A. HENNING AND V. NAICKER, Disjunctive total domination in graphs, J. Comb. Optim., 31(3)(2016), 1090–1110.
- [15] M.A. HENNING AND A. YEO, Total domination in graphs, *Springer Monographs in Mathematics, Springer, New York*, (2013).
- [16] I. MISHKOVSKI, M. BIEY AND L. KOCAREV, Vulnerability of complex Networks, Commun. Nonlinear Sci Numer Simulat., 16(2011), 341–349.
- [17] M.V. MODHA AND K.K. KANANI, On k-cordial labeling of some graphs, British Jour.of Math. and Comp. Sci., 13(3)(2016), 1–7.
- [18] S. NAZEER, S.K. KHAN, I. KOUSAR AND W. NAZEER, Radio labeling and radio number for generalized caterpillar graphs, J. Appl. Math. and Infor., 34(5-6)(2016), 451–465.



Disjunctive total domination in some tree networks

- [19] F. HARRARY, Graph Theory, Addison-Wesley: Boston, MA, USA, (1969).
- [20] R. DURGUT, H. KUTUCU AND T. TURACI, Global distribution center number of some graphs and an algorithm, *RAIRO-Operations Research*, **53(4)**(2019), 1217–1227.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.



MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 206–215.

http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/004

Application of Simpson's method for solving singular Volterra integral equation

MUSTAPHA YAHAYA*1 AND SIRAJO LAWAN BICHI

*1 Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science, Federal University Dutse, Jigawa, Nigeria.

² Department of Mathematical Sciences, Faculty of Science, Bayero University Kano, Kano, Nigeria.

Received 12 June 2021; Accepted 28 September 2021

Abstract. In this paper, the numerical scheme for solving singular Volterra integral equation is obtained by considering non-variable subinterval and the function under the integrals were approximated by the Simpson's rule. The error bound for the numerical scheme is established where the scheme derived has convergence of order 3. The scheme obtained is compared with exact solution of the tested problems which shows that the scheme is effective.

Keywords: Singular Volterra integral equation, convergence order, Simpson's rule, exact solution, error bound.

1. Introduction and Background

Singular Volterra integral equation of this form

$$u(t) = \int_0^t \frac{s^{\mu-1}}{t^{\mu}} u(s)ds + g(t), \quad t \in (0,T],$$
(1.1)

with $\mu > 0$, $g(t) \in C[0,T]$ is a given function and the kernel is weakly type has been considered by many authors. Diogo *et al.*[3], investigated the application of product integration method for the numerical solutions base on graded meshes by Trapezoidal method. Diogo *et al.* [1], utilized the analytic results for the existence and uniqueness solution of (1.1). Further more, Euler's and Trapezoidal methods were used to develop new schemes, comparison between them was made and error bound analysis were developed. Diogo *et al.* [2], used a class of singular Volterra integral equation of the form (1.1) and obtained the numerical schemes which uses Euler method and Trapezoidal rules. The numerical approximation base on the product Euler scheme converges to the smooth solution but with poor order of convergence. However, Diogo and Lima [4], analyzed discrete supperconvergence properties of spline collocation results and for a certain choice of parameter the attainable convergence order of (1.1) was considered. Diogo and Lima [5], proved that a higher order attained at the meshes points by special choice of the collocation methods. Also Diogo [6], utilized the iterated methods on the collocation results.

In this article we consider the work in Diogo *et al.* (2006) which we used the Simpson's method in the case of when $0 < \mu \le 1$, Eqn (1.1) has a family of solutions in the space C[0,T]. The work has been organized as follows; In section 2, we derived the scheme by applying the Simpson's method. In section 3, we estimates the error bound analysis for the convergence results of the propose scheme. Also, in section 4 we tested the scheme by means of some examples and finally in section 5 the conclusion was given.

^{*}Corresponding author. Email address: ymustapha830@fud.edu.ng (MUSTAPHA YAHAYA)

2. Derivation of the Scheme by Simpson's rule Approach

2.1. Definitions of the basic concepts

We start by presenting some definitions, theorems and lemmas;

Definition 2.1. A kernel is called separable if it can be expressed as the outer product of two variables (vectors). For examples

$$u(t) = \int_0^t \frac{s^{\mu-1}}{t^{\mu}} u(s) ds + g(t), \quad t \in [0,T],$$

where $k(t,s) = \frac{s^{\mu-1}}{t^{\mu}}$ that can be expressed as $k(t,s) = \frac{1}{t^{\mu}}s^{\mu-1}$ otherwise, it is nonseparable.

Theorem 2.2. *Mean Value Theorem: Let* u(x) *be a function which is continuous on the closed interval* [a, b] *and which is differentiable at every point of* (a,b)*. Then there is a point* $c \in (a,b)$ *such that*

$$u'(c) = \frac{u(b) - u(a)}{b - a},$$

Lemma 2.3. Special Gronwall lemma: Let (e_n) and (e_j) be nonnegative sequences and C a nonnegative constant if

$$u_n \le C + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} g_k u_k \quad for \quad n \ge 0,$$

then

$$u_n \leq C \prod_{j=0}^{n-1} (1+g_j) \leq C \exp^{\left(\sum_{j=0}^{n-1} g_j\right)} \quad for \quad n \geq 0.$$

Lemma 2.4. (i) If $0 < \mu \le 1$ and $g \in C^1[0,T]$ (with g(0) = 0 if $\mu = 1$) then equation(1) has a family of solutions $u \in C[0,T]$ given by the formula

$$u(t) = c_0 t^{1-\mu} + g(t) + \gamma + t^{1-\mu} \int_0^t s^{\mu-2} (g(s) - g(0)) ds,$$
(2.1)

where

$$\gamma := \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\mu - 1} g(0) & if \quad \mu < 1, \\ 0 & if \quad \mu = 1, \end{cases}$$

and c_0 is an arbitrary constant. Out of this family of solutions there is one particular solution $u \in C^1[0,T]$. (ii) If $\mu \leq 1$ and $g \in C^m[0,T]$, $m \geq 0$ then the unique solution $u \in C^m[0,T]$ of (1) is given by

$$u(t) = g(t) + t^{1-\mu} \int_0^t s^{\mu-2} g(s) ds.$$

We note that Eqn (2.4) can be obtained from Eqn (2.1) with $c_0 = 0$. Indeed; it follows from Eqn (2.1) that

$$c_0 = \lim_{t \to 0^+} t^{\mu - 1} u(t),$$

and this limit is zero when $\mu > 1$.



M. YAHAYA and S.L. BICHI

2.2. Derivation of the scheme

Let us reformulate (1.1) into a new form by choosing some fixed real number $\alpha > 0$. Substituting t by $t + \alpha$ in (1.1) we have

$$u(t+\alpha) = \int_0^{t+\alpha} \frac{s^{\mu-1}}{(t+\alpha)^{\mu}} u(s) ds + g(t+\alpha), \quad t \in [0,T],$$
(2.2)

by splitting of the interval we have

$$u(t+\alpha) = \frac{1}{(t+\alpha)^{\mu}} \int_0^{\alpha} s^{\mu-1} u(s) ds + \int_{\alpha}^{t+\alpha} \frac{s^{\mu-1}}{(t+\alpha)^{\mu}} u(s) ds + g(t+\alpha), \quad t \in [\alpha, T],$$
(2.3)

or, equivalently,

$$u(t+\alpha) = \frac{I_{\alpha}}{(t+\alpha)^{\mu}} + \int_{0}^{t} \frac{(s+\alpha)^{\mu-1}}{(t+\alpha)^{\mu}} u(s+\alpha) ds + g(t+\alpha),$$
(2.4)

where

$$I_{\alpha} = \int_0^{\alpha} s^{\mu-1} u(s) ds.$$
(2.5)

Since I_{α} is known exactly for a chosen the exact solution by using the solution formula then we can apply the numerical method in (2.4) and obtain the approximation. Now, let us define a uniform grid X_h with stepsize $h = \frac{t}{n}$

$$X_h := \{ t_i = ih + \alpha, \quad 0 \le i \le N \}.$$

Setting t = nh in (2.4) we have

$$u(t_n) = \frac{I_\alpha}{t_n^{\mu}} + \frac{1}{t_n^{\mu}} \int_0^{nh} (s+\alpha)^{\mu-1} u(s+\alpha) ds + g(t_n).$$
(2.6)

In the Simpson's method, we approximates the integral on the right-hand side of (2.6) by considering each subinterval using:

$$u(s+\alpha) \approx \frac{1}{6} \left[u(t_{j+1})(s-jh) + 4u\left(\frac{t_j+t_{j+1}}{2}\right)(t_{j+1}-t_j) + u(t_j)((j+1)h-s) \right],$$
(2.7)

on each subinterval $s \in [jh, (j+1)h]$. Defining the following

$$D_{j}^{1} := \int_{jh}^{(j+1)h} (s+\alpha)^{\mu-1} (s-jh) ds$$
$$D_{j}^{2} := \int_{jh}^{(j+1)h} (s+\alpha)^{\mu-1} ds$$
$$D_{j}^{3} := \int_{jh}^{(j+1)h} (s+\alpha)^{\mu-1} ((j+1)h-s) ds$$

which can be obtain analytically.

Hence the scheme:

$$u(t_n)_n^h = \frac{I_\alpha}{t_n^\mu} + \frac{h}{t_n^\mu} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \frac{(D_j^1 u_{j+1}^h + D_j^2 4 u_{j/2}^h + D_j^3 u_j^h)}{6} + g(t_n), \quad n = 1, 2, ..., N.$$
(2.8)



Application of Simpson's method for solving singular Volterra integral equation

2.3. Algorithm: Simpson's rule approach

Step1: Given n = 1, $\epsilon = 10^{-3}$, $t \in [0, T]$, $\mu \in (0, 1]$, $\alpha > 0$, u(t), g(t), I_{α} . Step2: Set $h = \frac{t}{n}$ Step3: Compute

$$\begin{split} t_n &= nh + \alpha \\ t_n^{\mu} &= (nh + \alpha)^{\mu} \\ u_n^{h} &= \frac{I_{\alpha}}{t_n^{\mu}} + \frac{h}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \frac{(D1_j u_{j+1}^{h} + D2_j u_{j/2}^{h} + D3_j u_{j}^{h})}{6} + g(t_n) \end{split}$$

where $\begin{array}{l} D1_{j} := \frac{(jh+\alpha)^{\mu+1} - ((j+1)h+\alpha)^{\mu+1} + h((j+1)h+\alpha)^{\mu}(\mu+1)}{(\mu+1)\mu}, \\ D2_{j} := \frac{h(((j+1)h+\alpha)^{\mu} - (jh+\alpha)^{\mu})}{\mu}, \\ D3_{j} := \frac{((j+1)h+\alpha)^{\mu+1} - (jh+\alpha)^{\mu+1} - h(jh+\alpha)^{\mu}(\mu+1)}{(\mu+1)\mu}, \\ u_{j+1}^{h} := u\left((j+1)h+\alpha\right), \\ u_{j/2}^{h} := 4u\left(\frac{(jh+\alpha) + ((j+1)h+\alpha)}{2}\right) \\ u_{j}^{h} := u\left(jh+\alpha\right) \\ \mathrm{If} \ |u(t) - u_{n}^{h}| \leq 10^{-2} \ \mathrm{stop}, \ \mathrm{else} \\ \mathrm{Step4: set} \ n = n + 1 \ \mathrm{and} \ \mathrm{go} \ \mathrm{to} \ \mathrm{Step3.} \end{array}$

3. Error Bound of the Scheme in Simpson's Rule Approach

In this section we present the error bound for the convergence of the scheme.

Theorem 3.1. Consider (1.1) with $0 < \mu \le 1$ and $u \in C^1[0,T]$. Let $\alpha \ne 0$ be fixed in the equivalent (2.4) and assume the integral I_{α} is known exactly for a chosen particular solution (corresponding to a certain value of the parameter c_0). Then the approximate solution obtained by the product Simpson's method converges with order 3 to the particular exact solution.

Proof. The solution u of the exact solution satisfies

$$u(t_n)_n^h = \frac{I_\alpha}{t_n^\mu} + \frac{h}{t_n^\mu} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \frac{(D_j^1 u_{j+1}^h + D_j^2 4 u_{j/2}^h + D_j^3 u_j^h)}{6} + g(t_n) + \eta(h, t_n), \quad n \ge 1,$$
(3.1)

where $\eta(h, t_n)$ is the consistency error given by

$$\eta(h,t_n) = \int_0^{t_n} \frac{s^{\mu-1}}{t_n^{\mu}} u(s) ds - \frac{h}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \frac{(D_j^1 u_{j+1}^h + D_j^2 4 u_{j/2}^h + D_j^3 u_j^h)}{6},$$
(3.2)

but the exact solution is

$$u(t_n) = \frac{I_\alpha}{t_n^{\mu}} + \frac{1}{t_n^{\mu}} \int_{\alpha}^T s^{\mu-1} u(s) ds + g(t_n).$$
(3.3)



M. YAHAYA and S.L. BICHI

Setting $e_n = u(t_n) - u(t_n)^h$ for $n \ge 1$ and by utilizing (3.3) and (3.1) this gives

$$\begin{split} e_n &= \frac{1}{t_n^{\mu}} \int_{\alpha}^{T} s^{\mu-1} u(s) ds - \frac{h}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \frac{(D_j^1 u_{j+1}^h + D_j^2 4 u_{j/2}^h + D_j^3 u_j^h)}{6} + \eta(h, t_n) \\ &= \frac{1}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} s^{\mu-1} u(t_j) ds - \frac{h^2}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} s^{\mu-1} \left(\frac{u(t_{j+1})^h + u(t_{j/2})^h + u(t_j)^h}{6} \right) ds \\ &+ \eta(h, t_n) \\ &= \frac{h^2}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} \left(u(t_j) - Su(t_j)^h \right) s^{\mu-1} ds + \eta(h, t_n) \end{split}$$

let $Su(t_j)^h = \frac{u(t_{j+1})^h + u(t_{j/2})^h + u(t_j)^h}{6}$ and defining $e_j^s := Se_j = \left(u(t_j) - Su(t_j)^h\right)$ yield

$$e_n = \frac{h^2}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} e_j^s \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} s^{\mu-1} ds + \eta(h, t_n), \quad n \ge 1,$$
(3.4)

but

$$\frac{1}{t_n^{\mu}} \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} s^{\mu-1} ds \leq \frac{t_j^{\mu-1}}{t_n^{\mu}} \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} ds$$

$$= h \frac{t_j^{\mu-1}}{t_n^{\mu}}$$

$$\leq h \left(\frac{t_j}{t_n}\right)^{\mu} \frac{1}{t_j}$$

$$\leq \frac{h}{\alpha}.$$
(3.5)

Since $\alpha \neq 0$ and for $\alpha > 0$ choose $\alpha \leq t_j \left(\frac{t_n}{t_j}\right)^{\mu}$. By utilizing (3.5) in (3.4) we have

$$e_n \le \frac{h^3}{\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} e_j^s + \eta(h, t_n), \quad n \ge 1.$$
 (3.6)

Taking the modulus in (3.6) we have

$$|e_n| \le \frac{h^3}{\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} |e_j^s| + |\eta(h, t_n)|, \quad n \ge 1$$
(3.7)

On the other hand from equation (3.2) we have

$$\begin{aligned} |\eta(h,t_n)| &= \left| \int_0^{t_n} \frac{s^{\mu-1}}{t_n^{\mu}} u(s) ds - \frac{h}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \frac{(D_j^1 u_{j+1}^h + D_j^2 4 u_{j/2}^h + D_j^3 u_j^h)}{6} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{1}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} D_j u(t_j) - \frac{h^2}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} D_j \left(\frac{u(t_{j+1})^h + u(t_{j/2})^h + u(t_j)^h}{6} \right) \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{h^2}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} D_j \left(u(s) - Su(t_j)^h \right) \right| \end{aligned}$$



Application of Simpson's method for solving singular Volterra integral equation

but

$$D_j := \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} s^{\mu - 1} ds$$

Therefore,

$$|\eta(h,t_n)| \le \frac{h^2}{t_n^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} s^{\mu-1} \left| \left(u(s) - Su(t_j)^h \right) \right| ds$$
(3.8)

by applying the mean value theorem in (3.8), we have

$$|\eta(h,t_n)| \le \frac{h^3}{t_n^{\mu}} \max_{s \in [\alpha,T]} |u'(s)| \int_{\alpha}^{t_n} s^{\mu-1} ds$$
(3.9)

Defining $M(\alpha) := \max_{s \in [\alpha, T]} |u'(s)|$

$$\begin{aligned} |\eta(h,t_n)| &\leq \frac{M(\alpha)h^3}{t_n^{\mu}} \int_{\alpha}^{t_n} s^{\mu-1} ds \\ &= \frac{M(\alpha)h^3}{\mu} \left(\frac{t_n^{\mu} - \alpha^{\mu}}{t_n^{\mu}}\right) \\ &= \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^{\mu}}{t_n^{\mu}}\right) \frac{M(\alpha)h^3}{\mu} \end{aligned}$$

we obtained the following bound

$$|\eta(h,t_n)| \le \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^{\mu}}{t_n^{\mu}}\right) \frac{M(\alpha)h^3}{\mu}$$
(3.10)

substitute (3.10) into (3.7) we have

$$|e_n| \le \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^{\mu}}{t_n^{\mu}}\right) \frac{M(\alpha)h^3}{\mu} + \frac{h^3}{\alpha} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} |e_j^s|$$
(3.11)

by applying the special Gronwall lemma for the discrete in (3.11) we have

$$|e_n| \le \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^{\mu}}{t_n^{\mu}}\right) \frac{M(\alpha)h^3}{\mu} \prod_{j=0}^{n-1} \left(1 + \frac{n-1}{\alpha}\right)$$

we obtained the error bound as

$$|e_n| \le \left(1 - \frac{\alpha^{\mu}}{t_n^{\mu}}\right) \frac{M(\alpha)h^3}{\mu} \exp\left(\frac{T-1}{\alpha}\right)$$

Hence, a third order convergence follows.

4. Main Results

In this section we tested the scheme using Maple13 version 10 with the stoping rule as $|u_n^h - u(t)| \le 10^{-3}$.

Problem 4.1. Given $g(t) = 1 + t + t^2$ and $0 < \mu \le 1$ in (1.1), then using (2.1) we obtained the general form of *its family of solutions:*

$$u(t) = c_0 t^{1-\mu} + \frac{\mu}{\mu - 1} + \frac{\mu + 1}{\mu} t + \frac{\mu + 2}{\mu + 1} t^2$$
(4.1)

where c_0 is an arbitrary constant. The exact solution (4.1) when t = 1.02 is compared with numerical solution (2.8) and errors are presented in Table 1



M. YAHAYA and S.L. BICHI

n	u_n^h	
	Eqn (2.8)	$ u(t) - u_n^h $
80	2.4543	6.664E - 1
82	2.5122	6.085E - 1
84	2.5707	5.500E - 1
86	2.6299	4.908E - 1
88	2.6899	4.308E - 1
90	2.7506	3.701E - 1
92	2.1190	3.088E - 1
94	2.8741	2.466E - 1
96	2.9369	1.838E - 1
98	3.0004	1.203E - 1
100	3.0647	5.600E - 2
102	3.1297	9.000E - 3

Table 1: The results obtained by the numerical scheme (2.8) on problem 1.

Table (1) shows that the numerical results of problem 4.1 obtained from scheme (2.8) which has exact solution of u(t) = 3.1207 and the best result is obtained when n = 102 with corresponding to an error of 9.000E - 3.

Problem 4.2. Given g(t) = 1 + t and $0 < \mu \le 1$ in (1.1), then using (2.1) we obtained the general form of its family of solutions:

$$u(t) = c_0 t^{1-\mu} + \frac{\mu}{\mu - 1} + \frac{\mu + 1}{\mu} t$$
(4.2)

where c_0 is an arbitrary constant. The exact solution (4.2) when t = 1.02 is compared with numerical solution (2.8) and errors are presented in Table (2)

n	u_n^h	
	Eqn (2.8)	$ u(t) - u_n^h $
80	1.7946	2.652E - 1
82	1.8195	2.403E - 1
84	1.8442	2.156E - 1
86	1.8689	1.909E - 1
88	1.8934	1.664E - 1
90	1.9179	1.419E - 1
92	1.9423	1.175E - 1
94	1.9666	9.320E - 2
96	1.9908	6.900E - 2
98	2.0149	4.490E - 2
100	2.0389	2.090E - 2
102	2.0663	6.500E - 3

Table 2: The results obtained by the numerical scheme (2.8) on problem2.



Application of Simpson's method for solving singular Volterra integral equation

Table (2) shows that the numerical results of problem 4.2 obtained from scheme (2.8) which has exact solution of u(t) = 2.0598 and the best result is obtained when n = 102 with corresponding to an error of 6.50E - 3. The error decreases when the number of iterations are increased. The results is an improvement when compared with the work of [5] which uses Euler's method with number of iterations up to 1600 corresponding to an error of 4.82E - 2.

Problem 4.3. Given $g(t) = 1 + t + t^3$ and $0 < \mu < 1$ in (1.1), then using (2.1) we obtained the general form of *its family of solutions:*

$$u(t) = c_0 t^{1-\mu} + \frac{\mu}{\mu - 1} + \frac{\mu + 1}{\mu} t + \frac{\mu + 3}{\mu + 2} t^3$$
(4.3)

where c_0 is an arbitrary constant. The exact solution (4.3) when t = 1.02 is compared with numerical solution (2.8) and errors are presented in Table (3)

n	u_n^h	
	Eqn (2.8)	$ u(t) - u_n^h $
80	2.3278	8.247E - 1
82	2.3932	7.593E - 1
84	2.4604	6.921E - 1
86	2.5296	6.229E - 1
88	2.6008	5.517E - 1
90	2.6739	4.786E - 1
92	2.7493	4.032E - 1
94	2.8268	3.257E - 1
96	2.9065	2.460E - 1
98	2.9884	1.641E - 1
100	3.0727	7.980E - 2
102	3.1593	6.800E - 3

Table 3: The results obtained by the numerical scheme (2.8) on problem3.

Table (3) shows that the numerical results of problem (4.3) obtained from scheme (2.8) which has exact solution of u(t) = 3.1525 and the best result is obtained when n = 102 with corresponding to an error of 6.800E-3. The error decreases when the number of iterations are increased. The results is an improvement when compared with the work of [5] which uses Euler's method with number of iterations up to 1600 corresponding to an error of 4.82E-2.



M. YAHAYA and S.L. BICHI

4.1. The comparison of the numerical schemes

Here we presented the scheme (2.8) derived from Midpoint's rule when compared with Euler's method in [5].

n	scheme (2.8)	scheme (2.8)	Euler's in [5]
	Errors1	Errors2	Errors
80	5.759E - 1	2.321E - 1	3.919E - 1
82	5.183E - 1	2.072E - 1	4.173E - 1
84	4.599E - 1	1.825E - 1	4.423E - 1
86	4.009E - 1	1.578E - 1	4.671E - 1
88	3.412E - 1	1.333E - 1	4.817E - 1
90	2.807E - 1	1.089E - 1	5.159E - 1
92	2.196E - 1	8.460E - 2	5.400E - 1
94	1.578E - 1	6.030E - 2	5.638E - 1
96	9.520E - 2	3.620E - 2	5.874E - 1
98	3.190E - 2	1.210E - 2	6.108E - 1
99	1.000E - 4	1.000E - 4	6.224E - 1

Table 4: The comparison of scheme (2.8) and Euler's methods in [5] using errors of problem 1 and 2.

Table (4) Shows that the errors obtained from the scheme (2.8) is an improvement when compared with the work of [5] which uses Euler's method, since the error decreases when the number of iterations are increased. This shows that the scheme obtained has a better result when compared with the Euler's method with number of iterations up to 1600 corresponding to an error of 4.82E - 2.

5. Conclusion

The function under the integrals were approximated base on the concepts of Simpson's rule. We used error bound estimates for the convergence of the scheme obtained. The numerical results were obtained by means of some examples so as to test the efficiency, accuracy and effectiveness of the new scheme derived. The new approach of the numerical scheme obtained from Simpson's rule was compared with exact solutions.

References

- [1] T. DIOGO, J.T. EDWARDS, N.J. FORD AND S.M. THOMAS, Numerical analysis of a singular integral equation, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, **167**(2005), 372–382.
- [2] T. DIOGOA, N.J. FORD, P. LIMA AND S. VALTCHEVA, Numerical methods for a Volterra integral equation with non-smooth solutions, *Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics*, **189**(2006), 412–423.
- [3] M. T. DIOGO, P.M. LIMA AND M.S. REBELO, Comparative study of numerical methods for a nonlinear weakly singular Volterra integral equation, *Journal of Mathematics and Mathematical Sciences*, **8**(2004), 1–10.
- [4] T. DIOGO AND P. LIMA, Collocation solutions of a weakly singular Volterra integral equation, TEMA Tend. Mat. Apl. Comput., 8(2)(2007), 229–238.



Application of Simpson's method for solving singular Volterra integral equation

- [5] T. DIOGO AND P. LIMA, Super convergence of collocation methods for a class of weakly singular Volterra integral equations *Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics*, **218**(2008), 307–316.
- [6] T. DIOGO, Collocation and iterated collocation methods for a class of weakly singular Volterra integral equations, *Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics*, **229**(2009), 363–372.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.



MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK

Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 216–221. http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/005

(e)-Convergence for double sequences

ULAŞ YAMANCI^{*1}

¹ Department of Statistics, Suleyman Demirel University, 32260, Isparta, Turkey.

Received 23 July 2021; Accepted 05 September 2021

Abstract. We define the notion of (e)-summability of double sequences and series of complex numbers. We also obtain a criteria for this summability method with regards to Berezin symbols of an diagonal operator, and show regularity of (e)-summability method for double sequences.

AMS Subject Classifications: 40H05.

Keywords: Berezin symbol, diagonal operator, double sequence, (e)-summability.

Contents

1	Introduction and Background	216
2	Main Results	217

1. Introduction and Background

A double sequence $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n=0}^{\infty}$ is called the convergent in Pringsheim's sense [14] provided that there exists a number a such that a_{mn} converges to a as both m and n approach to infinity independently of one another

$$\lim_{m,n\to\infty}a_{mn}=a,$$

that is if for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists $K = K(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|a_{mn} - a| < \varepsilon$ for every $m, n \ge K$ and also a is said to the Pringsheim's limit of a_{mn} . It is obvious that $\{a_{mn}\}$ is convergent in Pringsheim's sense if and only if for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists an integer $K = K(\varepsilon) \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|a_{mn} - a_{ij}| < \varepsilon$ for $\min\{m, n, i, j\} \ge K$. A double sequence $\{a_{mn}\}$ is bounded provided that there exists a positive number N such that $|a_{mn}| \le N$ for every m and n, i.e., $\sup_{m,n} |a_{mn}| < \infty$.

A double sequence $\{a_{mn}\}$ is said to be convergent regularly provided that it is convergent in Pringsheim's sense and the following limits hold:

$$\lim_{m,n\to\infty} a_{mn} = x_m \ (m = 1, 2, \dots) ,$$
$$\lim_{m,n\to\infty} a_{mn} = x_n \ (n = 1, 2, \dots) .$$

It is well known that a convergent double sequence in Pringsheim's sense fails in general to be bounded. The concept of regular convergence, which was introduced by Hardy in [7], lacks this advantage. Moreover, the regular convergence requires the convergence of rows and columns of a double sequence. (For more information about several type convergence for double sequences, see [18] and its references.)

^{*}Corresponding author. Email address: ulasyamanci@sdu.edu.tr (Ulaş Yamancı)

(e)-Convergence for double sequences

A reproducing kernel Hilbert space (shorty, RKHS) $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}(\Omega)$ on some set Ω is a Hilbert space of functions on Ω such that for every $\lambda \in \Omega$ the linear functional (evaluation functional) $f \to f(\lambda)$ is bounded on \mathcal{H} . If \mathcal{H} is RKHS on set Ω , then by the classical Riesz Representation Theorem for every $\lambda \in \Omega$ there is a unique element $k_{\lambda} \in \mathcal{H}$ for which $f(\lambda) = \langle f, k_{\lambda} \rangle$ for all $f \in \mathcal{H}$. The function k_{λ} is said to be reproducing kernel at λ . We know that (see, Aronzajn [1] and Saitoh [15]) provided that $(e_j)_{j \in J}$ is an orthonormal basis for the RKHS \mathcal{H} ,

$$k_{\lambda}(z) = \sum_{j \in J}^{\infty} \overline{e_j(\lambda)} e_j(z), \ z \in \Omega.$$

The function

$$\widehat{k}_{\lambda} = \frac{k_{\lambda}}{\|k_{\lambda}\|_{\mathcal{H}}} = \frac{1}{\left(\sum_{j \in J} |e_{j}\left(\lambda\right)|^{2}\right)^{1/2}} \sum_{j \in J} \overline{e_{j}\left(\lambda\right)} e_{j}\left(z\right)$$

is called the normalized reproducing kernel at λ .

Berezin [2, 3] introduced the concept of contravariant and covariant symbols of an operator. The contravariant symbol of a Toeplitz operator, which is the so-called Berezin symbol, was firstly used by Berger and Coburn in [4, 5].

Let A be a bounded operator on reproducing kernel Hilbert spaces. Then the function

$$\widetilde{A}(\lambda) := < A \widehat{k}_{\lambda}, \widehat{k}_{\lambda} >, \ \lambda \in \Omega,$$

is called the Berezin symbol, which is a bounded function by the norm of the operator (see [2]). On the reproducing kernel Hilbert spaces, $\tilde{A}_1(\lambda) = \tilde{A}_2(\lambda)$ for all λ implies $A_1 = A_2$, that is, the Berezin symbol uniquely determines the operator. Therefore, the Berezin symbol includes many information about the operator that induces it. Prosperous applications of the Berezin symbol are up to now commonly in the study of operator theory, such as Toeplitz and Hankel operators [19]. The Berezin symbol technique is motivated by its connections with quantum physics (see, for example, [2, 3]). Readers can found more informations about Berezin symbols and its applications, for instance in [9, 13, 19].

A RKHS $\mathcal{H}(\Omega)$ is standard provided that the underlying set Ω is a subset of a topological space and the boundary of Ω is non-empty and has the property that $(k_{\mathcal{H},\lambda_n})_n$ converges weakly to 0 whenever $(\lambda_n)_n$ is a sequence in Ω that converges to a point in $\partial\Omega$. It is obvious that $\lim_{n\to\infty} \widetilde{K}(\lambda_n) = 0$ for any compact operator K on the standard RKHS \mathcal{H} whenever $(\lambda_n)_n \subset \Omega$ converges to a point of $\partial\Omega$. In this case, the Berezin symbol of a compact operator on a standard RKHS vanishes on the boundary (see [13]).

Karaev [11] introduced (e)-convergent for single sequences and series of complex numbers. Later, he [12] gave a Tauberian-type therom for (e)-convergent sequences. Using the Berezin symbol technique, new proofs for (L)-convergence and Abel convergence were given in [8, 16].

2. Main Results

In this section, we define a concept of (e)-convergence for double sequences and series of complex numbers. We obtain a criteria for this summability method with regards to Berezin symbols of an diagonal operator, and show regularity of (e)-summability method for double sequences.

Recall that a method is called the regular provided that it sums each convergent sequence to its ordinary limit. For instance, Abel, Cezaro and Borel methods are regular (see [6]).

Let $\mathcal{H}=\mathcal{H}\left(\Omega\times\Omega\right)$ be a reproducing kernel Hilbert space on some set $\Omega\times\Omega$, $\{e_{mn}\}_{m,n\geq0}$ be an orthonormal basis of \mathcal{H} and

$$k_{\lambda,\mu}\left(z,w\right):=\sum_{m,n\geq0}\overline{e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)}e_{mn}\left(z,w\right),$$

be a reproducing kernel of $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H} (\Omega \times \Omega)$.



Ulaş Yamancı

Definition 2.1. Let $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n\geq 0}$ be a double sequence of complex numbers. (a) The sequence $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n>0}$ is (e)-convergent to L provided that

$$\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} a_{mn} \left| e_{mn} \left(\lambda, \mu \right) \right|^2$$

converges for all $(\lambda, \mu) \in \Omega \times \Omega$ *and*

$$\lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)}\frac{1}{\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty}\left|e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)\right|^{2}}\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty}a_{mn}\left|e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)\right|^{2}=L,$$

for every $(\zeta, \xi) \in \partial \Omega \times \partial \Omega$.

(b) The series $\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} a_{mn}$ is (e)-summable to L provided that

$$\sum_{n,n=0}^{\infty} a_{mn} \left| e_{mn} \left(\lambda, \mu \right) \right|^2$$

converges for each $(\lambda, \mu) \in \Omega \times \Omega$ and

$$\lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)}\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty}a_{mn}\left|e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)\right|^{2}=L$$

for each $(\zeta, \xi) \in \partial \Omega \times \partial \Omega$.

It was shown that Abel and Borel summability for double sequences coincide with concept of (e)-summability for Hardy space and Fock space, respectively (see [10, 17]).

Let $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n\geq 0}$ be a double sequence of complex numbers. Diagonal operator $D_{\{a_{mn}\}}$ on \mathcal{H} is defined by

$$D_{\{a_{mn}\}}e_{mn}(\lambda, z) = a_{mn}e_{mn}(\lambda, z), \ m, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

with respect to the orthonormal basis $e = \{e_{mn}(\lambda, z)\}_{m,n>0}$ of \mathcal{H} . The following result is main theorem of this section.

Theorem 2.2. Let $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n\geq 0}$ be a bounded double sequence of complex numbers. (a) The sequence $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n\geq 0}$ is (e)-convergent to L if and only if

$$\lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)}\widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)=L$$

for every $(\zeta, \xi) \in \partial\Omega \times \partial\Omega$. **(b)** The series $\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} a_{mn}$ is (e)-summable to L if and only if

$$\lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)} \left(\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} \left|e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)\right|^{2}\right) \widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}}\left(\lambda,\mu\right) = L$$

for every $(\zeta, \xi) \in \partial \Omega \times \partial \Omega$.

(c) (e)-summability method for double sequences is regular provided that \mathcal{H} is a standard functional Hilbert space.



(e)-Convergence for double sequences

Proof. As $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n>0}$ is a bounded double sequence, $D_{\{a_{mn}\}}$ is a bounded operator on \mathcal{H} . Calculating the Berezin symbol of diagonal operator, we have

$$\begin{split} \widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}}\left(\lambda,\mu\right) &= \left\langle D_{\{a_{mn}\}}\widehat{k}_{\lambda,\mu},\widehat{k}_{\lambda,\mu}\right\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\|k_{\lambda,\mu}\|^2} \left\langle D_{\{a_{mn}\}} \sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} \overline{e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)} e_n\left(z,w\right), k_{\lambda,\mu}\right\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2} \left\langle \sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} \overline{e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)} a_{mn} e_{mn}\left(z,w\right), k_{\lambda,\mu}\right\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2} \sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} a_{m,n} |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2 \end{split}$$

for all $(\lambda, \mu) \in \Omega \times \Omega$. Therefore

$$\widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}}\left(\lambda,\mu\right) = \frac{1}{\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} \left|e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)\right|^2} \sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} a_{mn} \left|e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)\right|^2, \ (\lambda,\mu) \in \Omega \times \Omega.$$
(1)

As $\sup_{(\lambda,\mu)\in\Omega\times\Omega} \left|\widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}}(\lambda,\mu)\right| \leq \left\|\widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}}\right\| = \sup_{m,n\geq0} |a_{mn}| < \infty$, formula (1) immediately implies the claims (a) and (b) of the theorem.

Let us show the claim (c). Let $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n=0}^{\infty}$ converges to L. Then $D_{\{a_{mn}-L\}}$ is a compact operator, and hence $\widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}-L\}}$ vanishes on the boundary of $\Omega \times \Omega$ (since \mathcal{H} is a standard reproducing kernel Hilbert space), that is, $\tilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}-L\}}(\lambda,\mu) \to 0$ as $(\lambda,\mu) \to (\zeta,\xi) \in \partial\Omega \times \partial\Omega$. Taking into consideration this and formula (1), we get

$$\lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)} \widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}} \left(\lambda,\mu\right) = \lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)} \frac{1}{\sum\limits_{m,n=0}^{\infty} |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2} \sum\limits_{m,n=0}^{\infty} a_{mn} |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2$$
$$= \lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)} \frac{1}{\sum\limits_{m,n=0}^{\infty} |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2} \sum\limits_{m,n=0}^{\infty} (a_{mn} - L + L) |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2$$
$$= \lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)} \frac{1}{\sum\limits_{m,n=0}^{\infty} |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2} \sum\limits_{m,n=0}^{\infty} (a_{mn} - L) |e_{mn}\left(\lambda,\mu\right)|^2 + L$$
$$= \lim_{(\lambda,\mu)\to(\zeta,\xi)} \widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}-L\}} + L,$$

which gives that (e)- $\lim_{m,n} a_{mn} = L$. So, the proof is completed.

We can obtain the following result from Theorem 1 by putting $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{D}^2)$ and $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^2)$.

Corollary 2.3. Let $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n\geq 0}$ be a bounded double sequence of complex numbers. (a) If $D_{\{a_{mn}\}}$ is a diagonal operator on the Dirichlet space $\mathcal{D}(\mathbb{D}^2)$ with diagonal elements a_{mn} , $m, n \ge 0$, with respect to the orthonormal basis of \mathcal{D} , then the double sequence $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n\geq 0}$ is (L)-convergent (logarithmic convergent) to L if and only if

$$\lim_{\lambda,\mu\to 1^-} \widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}}\left(\sqrt{x},\sqrt{y}\right) = L,$$

where $x = |\lambda|^2$ and $y = |\mu|^2$.

(b) If $D_{\{a_{mn}\}}$ is a diagonal operator on the Fock space $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}^2)$ with diagonal elements $a_{mn}, m, n \geq 0$, with



Ulaş Yamancı

respect to the orthonormal basis of \mathcal{D} , then the double sequence $\{a_{mn}\}_{m,n\geq 0}$ is Borel convergent to L if and only if

$$\lim_{\lambda,\mu\to\infty}\widetilde{D}_{\{a_{mn}\}}\left(\sqrt{2x},\sqrt{2y}\right)=L,$$

where $x = \frac{\left|\lambda\right|^2}{2}$ and $y = \frac{\left|\mu\right|^2}{2}$.

References

- [1] N. ARONZAJN, Theory of reproducing kernels, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc., 68(1950), 337-404.
- [2] F.A. BEREZIN, Covariant and contravariant symbols for operators, *Math. USSR-Izv.*, 6(1972), 1117-1151.
- [3] F.A. BEREZIN, Quantization, Math. USSR-Izv., 8(1974), 1109-1163.
- [4] C.A. BERGER AND L.A. COBURN, Toeplitz operators and quantum mechanics, J. Funct. Anal., 68 (1986), 273-299.
- [5] C.A. BERGER AND L.A. COBURN, Toeplitz operators on the Segal-Bergman space, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 301 (1987), 813-829.
- [6] G.H. HARDY, Divergent Series, Oxford, 1956.
- [7] G.H. HARDY, On the convergence of certain multiplie series, *Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.*, 19 (1916-1919), 86-95.
- [8] M.T. KARAEV, Functional analysis proofs of Abel's theorems, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc., 132 (2004), 2327-2329.
- [9] M.T. KARAEV, On some problems related to Berezin symbols, C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris, 340(2005), 715-718.
- [10] M.T. KARAEV AND M. ZELSTER, On Abel convergence of double sequences, Numer. Funct. Anal. Optim., 31(10)(2010), 1185-1189.
- [11] M.T. KARAEV, (e)-convergence and related problem, C. R. Math. Acad. Sci. Paris, 348(2010), 1059-1062.
- [12] M.T. KARAEV, Tauberian-type theorem for (e)-convergent sequences, C. R. Math. Acad. Sci. Paris, 351(2013), 177-179.
- [13] E. NORDGREN AND P. ROSENTHAL, Boundary values of Berezin symbols, Operator Theory: Advances and Applications, 73(1994), 362-368.
- [14] A. PRINGSHEIM, Elementare theorie der unendliche doppelreihen, Sitsungs Berichte der Math. Akad. der Wissenschafften zu Münch. Ber., 7(1898), 101-153.
- [15] S. SAITOH, Theory of reproducing kernels and its applications, *Pitman Research Notes in Mathematics Series*, v.**189**, 1988.
- [16] U. YAMANCI, On the summability methods of logarithmic type and the Berezin symbol, *Turk. J. Math.*, 42(2018), 2417-2422.
- [17] U. YAMANCI, On Borel convergence of double sequences, *Commun. Fac. Sci. Univ. Ank. Ser. A1 Math. Stat.*, 68(2)(2019), 1289-1293.
- [18] M. ZELSTER, Investigation methods for summability of double sequences, Ph.D thesis, Tallin, 2001.



(e)-Convergence for double sequences

[19] K. ZHU, Operator Theory in Function Spaces, New York: Marcel Dekker, 1990.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.



MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK

Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 222–227. http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/006

Common fixed point theorem satisfying rational contraction in complex valued dislocated metric space

J. UMA MAHESWARI¹, A. ANBARASAN 2 , LAKSHMI NARAYAN MISHRA 3 and Vishnu Narayan Mishra *4

¹ Department of Mathematics, St.Joseph's College(Autonomous), Tiruchirappalli-620002, India.

² Department of Mathematics, St. Charles College of Arts and Science, Eraiyur, Ulundurpet-607201, India.

³ Department of Mathematics, School of Advanced Sciences, Vellore Institute of Technology (VIT) University, Vellore 632 014, Tamil Nadu, India.

⁴ Department of Mathematics, Indira Gandhi National Tribal University, Laipur, Amarkantak, Anuppur, Madhya Pradesh, India 484887.

Received 06 May 2021; Accepted 05 September 2021

Abstract. In this article we introduce a notion of fixed point theorem satisfying rational contraction in complex valued dislocated metric space and also support our main theorem to provide an example.

AMS Subject Classifications: 47H10, 54H25.

Keywords: Complex valued metric spaces, dislocated metric space, fixed point.

Contents

1	Introduction	222
2	Preliminaries	223
3	Main Results	223
4	Acknowledgement	226

1. Introduction

In Mathematical analysis, general topology and functional analysis the fixed point theory play a very important role. Many applications of fixed point theory in computer science, engineering field, image processing and mathematics etc. Banach contraction mapping principle play a crucial role in the fixed point theory. The concept of dislocated metric space was first introduced by Hitzler in 2001. He generalized the Banach contraction mapping principle in the dislocated metric space. The beauty of dislocated metric space that the self distance between two points need not be necessarily zero. The logical programming, topology, electronic engineering and computer science etc. these are the fields which the dislocated metric space play a very vital role. Azam et al. introduced the complex valued metric spaces and proved Banach contraction mapping principle. So many researchers proved many contraction principle by this complex valued metric spaces. Ozgur edge and Ismet karaca introduced the complex valued disclocated metric spaces. Now we are going to prove the complex valued dislocated metric spaces in the fixed point theorem satisfying rational contraction mapping. Before entering into our main results we shall recall some basic definition and results which are needful.

^{*}Corresponding author. Email address: vnm@igntu.ac.in (Vishnu Narayan Mishra)

Common fixed point theorem satisfying rational contraction in complex valued dislocated metric space

2. Preliminaries

We recollect some basic definitions and notions which is useful for proving our main results. Let C be the set of complex numbers and $v_1, v_2 \in C$. Define a partial order \leq on C as follows: $v_1 \leq v_2$ if and only if $Re(v_1) \leq Re(v_2)$, $Im(v_1) \leq Im(v_2)$. Consequently, one can infer that $v_1 \leq v_2$ if one of the following conditions is satisfied: (i) $Re(v_1) = Re(v_2)$, $Im(v_1) < Im(v_2)$, (ii) $Re(v_1) < Re(v_2)$, $Im(v_1) = Im(v_2)$, (iii) $Re(v_1) < Re(v_2)$, $Im(v_1) < Im(v_2)$, (iv) $Re(v_1) = Re(v_2)$, $Im(v_1) < Im(v_2)$, In particular,we write $v_1 \leq v_2$ if $v_1 \neq v_2$ and one of (i), (ii) and (iii) is satisfied and we write $v_1 < v_2$ if only (iii) is satisfied. Notice that (a) If $0 \leq v_1 \leq v_2$, then $|v_1| < |v_2|$, (b) If $v_1 \leq v_2$ and $v_2 < v_3$ then $v_1 < v_3$, (c) If $p, q \in R$ and $p \leq q$ then $pv \leq qv$ for all $v \in C$. Now we define a complex valued dislocated metric space

Definition 2.1. Consider γ_d be a non void set and define a function $\gamma_d : H \times H \to C$ satisfies the following conditions such that for all $u, r, w \in H$

 $\begin{aligned} (1)\gamma_d(u,r) &= \gamma_d(r,u) \\ (2)\gamma_d(u,r) &= \gamma_d(r,u) = 0 \text{ if and only if } u = r \\ (3)\gamma_d(u,r) &\leq \gamma_d(u,w) + \gamma_d(w,r) \end{aligned}$

Then γ_d is said to be complex valued dislocated metric space and call (H, γ_d) is a complex valued dislocated metric space.

Example 2.2. Consider the function that $\gamma_d : H \times H \to C$ be defined by $\gamma_d(u, r) = max\{u, r\}$ where H = C then it is called as complex valued dislocated metric space.

Remark 2.3. Every complex valued metric space is a complex valued dislocated metric space but converse need not be true.

Definition 2.4. Consider (H, γ_d) be a complex valued dislocated metric space and define a sequence $\{u_n\}$ in H for each $u \in H$

(i)let the sequence $\{u_n\}$ be convergent to u in (H, γ_d) is said to be complex valued dislocated metric space then for each $\epsilon > 0$ we can find $n_0 \in N$ such that $\gamma_d(u_n, u) < \epsilon$ for each $n > n_0$ which is denoted by $u_n \to u$

(ii)Consider the sequence $\{u_n\}$ be cauchy sequence in (H, γ_d) is called complex valued dislocated metric space if $\lim_{n\to\infty}\gamma_d(u_n, u_{n+b}) = 0$ for each b > 0

(iii)Let (H,γ_d) be a complex valued complete dislocated metric space if every complex valued cauchy sequence in H converges to some $u \in H$.

We state the two lemmas which are useful to prove our main theorem

Lemma 2.5. Consider (H,γ_d) be a complex valued dislocated metric space.Let $\{u_n\}$ be sequence in H. Then $\{u_n\}$ converges to u if and only if $|\gamma_d(u_n, u)| \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$

Lemma 2.6. Consider (H,γ_d) be a complex valued dislocated metric space.Let $\{u_n\}$ be sequence in H. Then $\{u_n\}$ is a complex valued dislocated metric cauchy sequence if and only if $|\gamma_d(u_n, u_{n+b})| \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$

3. Main Results

In this section, we prove the theorem by using new rational contraction mapping in complex valued dislocated metric space.

Now we first define the rational contraction mapping in complex valued dislocated metric space



J. Uma Maheswari, A Anbarasan, Lakshmi Narayan Mishra and Vishnu Narayan Mishra

Definition 3.1. Let (H, γ_d) be a complete complex valued dislocated metric space. Consider the function $G, T : H \to H$ which satisfies the rational contraction conditions

 $\gamma_d(Gu,Tr) \leq a[\gamma_d(u,r)] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(u,Tr)]^2}{1+\gamma_d(u,r)+\gamma_d(r,Tr)} + c[\gamma_d(u,Tr) + \gamma_d(u,Gu)]$ for each $u,r \in H$ and the non negativity constants are a, b, c

Theorem 3.2. Let (H, γ_d) be a complete complex valued dislocated metric space. Consider the function $G, T : H \to H$ which satisfies the rational contraction conditions of (3.1) with 2a + 6b + 3c < 1. Then G has unique common fixed point.

Proof. Let u_0 be the arbitrary point in H. Now define $u_{k+1} = Gu_k, u_{k+2} = Tu_{k+1}$, for each $k \in Z^+$ Therefore, $\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) = \gamma_d(Gu_k, Tu_{k+1})$ $\leq a[\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(u_k, Tu_{k+1})]^2}{1 + \gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, Tu_{k+1})} + c[\gamma_d(u_k, Tu_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_k, Gu_k)]$ $\leq a[\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+2})]^2}{1+\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})+\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})} + c[\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})]$ $\leq a[\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})]^2}{1 + \gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})} + c[\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})]$ $|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + 3b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k$ $c|2\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})|$ Since $|1 + d(u_k, u_{k+1}) + d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| > |d(u_k, u_{k+1}) + d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})|$ Now $|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + 3b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + 3b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(u$ $2c|\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})| + c|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})|$ Therefore $|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| \le \frac{a+3b+2c}{1-(3b+c)} |\gamma_d(u_k, u_{k+1})|$ Similarly, $\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3}) = \gamma_d(Gu_{k+1}, Tu_{k+2})$ $\leq a[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, Tu_{k+2})]^2}{1+\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})+\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, Tu_{k+2})} + c[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, Tu_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, Gu_{k+1})]$ $\leq a[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+3})]^2}{1 + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})} +$ $c[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+3}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})]$ $\leq a[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})]^2}{1 + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})} + c[\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})]$ $|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + 3b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3}$ $c|2\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})|$ Since $|1 + d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| > |d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})|$ Now $|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + 3b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + 3b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| \le a|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{k+3})| + b|\gamma_d(u_{k+3}, u_{$ $2c|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + c|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})|$ Therefore $|\gamma_d(u_{k+2}, u_{k+3})| \le \frac{a+3b+2c}{1-(3b+c)} |\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})|$



Common fixed point theorem satisfying rational contraction in complex valued dislocated metric space

Since a + 3b + 2c < 1 therefore $\alpha = \frac{a+3b+2c}{1-(3b+c)} < 1$ Then, we have $|\gamma_d(u_{n+1}, u_{n+2})| \le \alpha |\gamma_d(u_n, u_{n+1})| \le \dots \le \alpha^{n+1} |\gamma_d(u_0, u_1)|$ Therefore for every m > n we have $|\gamma_d(u_n, u_m)| \le |\gamma_d(u_n, u_{n+1})| + |\gamma_d(u_{n+1}, u_{n+2})| + \dots + |\gamma_d(u_{m-1}, u_m)|$ $|\gamma_d(u_n, u_m)| \le |\alpha^n + \alpha^{n+1} + \dots + \alpha^{m-1}] |\gamma_d(u_0, u_1)|$
$$\begin{split} &|\gamma_d(u_n,u_m)| \leq \frac{\alpha^n}{1-\alpha} |\gamma_d(u_0,u_1)| \\ &|\gamma_d(u_n,u_m)| \leq \frac{\alpha^n}{1-\alpha} |\gamma_d(u_0,u_1)| \to 0 \text{ as } n,m \to \infty \end{split}$$
Hence $\{u_n\}$ is a cauchy sequence. Since H is complete there must exist $x \in H$ such that $\{u_n\} \to x$ as $n \to \infty$ Suppose on contrary that $x \neq Gx$ so $\gamma_d(x, Gx) = y$ Now

$$\begin{split} y &\leq \gamma_d(x, x_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+2}, Gx) \\ &\leq \gamma_d(x, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(Tu_{k+1}, Gx) \\ &\leq a[\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(x, Tu_{k+1})]^2}{1 + \gamma_d(x, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, Tu_{k+1})} + c[\gamma_d(x, Tu_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(x, Gx)] \\ &\leq a[\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(x, u_{k+2})]^2}{1 + \gamma_d(x, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})} + c[\gamma_d(x, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(x, Gx)] \\ &|y| \leq a[\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})] + 3b[\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})] + c[\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2}) + \gamma_d(x, Gx)] \end{split}$$

 $|1 + \gamma_d(x, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| > |\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1}) + \gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})|$ Therefore

 $|y| \le a|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + 3b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + 3b|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + c|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+1})| + b|\gamma_d(x, u_{k+$ $c|\gamma_d(u_{k+1}, u_{k+2})| + c|\gamma_d(x, Gx)|$

Letting $n \to \infty$ we have

 $|\gamma_d(x, Gx)| \leq \frac{a+6b+2c}{1-c} |\gamma_d(x, x)|$ Since a + 6b + 2c < 1Therefore, we have $|\gamma_d(x, Gx)| \to 0$ which is the contradiction.

Hence Gx = x similarly we prove that Tx = x

To prove the uniqueness of common fixed point of G and T, let $d \in H$ be the another common fixed point of G and T, we have

$$\begin{split} \gamma_d(x,d) &= \gamma_d(Gx,Td) \leq a[\gamma_d(x,d)] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(x,Td)]^2}{1+\gamma_d(x,d)+\gamma_d(d,Td)} + c[\gamma_d(x,Td) + \gamma_d(x,Gx)] \\ &\leq a[\gamma_d(x,d)] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(x,d)]^2}{1+\gamma_d(x,d)+\gamma_d(d,d)} + c[\gamma_d(x,d) + \gamma_d(x,x)] \\ &\leq a[\gamma_d(x,d)] + \frac{3b[\gamma_d(x,d)+\gamma_d(d,d)]^2}{1+\gamma_d(x,d)+\gamma_d(d,d)} + c[\gamma_d(x,d) + \gamma_d(x,x)] \\ |\gamma_d(x,d)| \leq a|\gamma_d(x,d)| + 3b|\gamma_d(x,d) + \gamma_d(d,d)| + c|\gamma_d(x,d) + \gamma_d(x,x)| \\ \text{Since } |1 + \gamma_d(x,d) + \gamma_d(d,d)| > |\gamma_d(x,d) + \gamma_d(d,d)| \\ \text{Now,} \\ |\gamma_d(x,d)| \leq a|\gamma_d(x,d)| + 3b|\gamma_d(x,d)| + 3b|\gamma_d(d,d)| + c|\gamma_d(x,d)| + c|\gamma_d(x,x)| \\ |\gamma_d(x,d)| \leq \frac{3b}{1-(a+3b+c)}|\gamma_d(d,d)| + \frac{c}{1-(a+3b+c)}|\gamma_d(x,x)| \\ \text{Since } a + 6b + 3c < 1 \text{ therefore we have } x = d \text{ which shows the uniqueness of common fixed point.} \end{split}$$

Corollary 3.3. Let (H, γ_d) be a complete complex valued dislocated metric space. Consider the function G, T: $H \to H$ which satisfies the rational contraction conditions $\gamma_d(Gu, Tr) \leq a[\gamma_d(u, r)] + c[\gamma_d(u, Tr) + \gamma_d(u, Gu)]$ for each $u, r \in H$ and the non negativity constants are a, c with 2a + 3c < 1. Then G has unique common fixed point.

Corollary 3.4. Let (H, γ_d) be a complete complex valued dislocated metric space. Consider the function G: $H \to H$ which satisfies the contraction conditions $\gamma_d(Gu^n, Gr^n) \leq a[\gamma_d(u, r)]$ for each $u, r \in H$ and the non negativity constant a with a < 1. Then G has unique fixed point.

Example 3.5. Let X = C be set of complex numbers. Define $f: C \times C \rightarrow C$ as follows where $z_1 = x_1 + iy_1$



J. Uma Maheswari, A Anbarasan, Lakshmi Narayan Mishra and Vishnu Narayan Mishra

 $z_2 = x_2 + iy_2$. Then (C, f) is a complete complex valued dislocated metric space. Define $G : C \to C$ as

$$G(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } x, y \in Q. \\ 1+2i, & \text{if } x, y \in Q^c \\ 2 & \text{if } x \in Q^c, y \in Q \\ 5i & \text{if } x \in Q, y \in Q^c \end{cases}$$

Let us consider $x = \sqrt{3}$ and y = 0 we obtain, $f(G(\sqrt{3}), L(0)) = f(3, 0) = 3 \preccurlyeq \alpha f(\sqrt{3}, 0) = \alpha \sqrt{3}$ Therefore, $\alpha \succcurlyeq \sqrt{3}$, which is a contradiction as $0 \preccurlyeq \alpha \prec 1$ We notice that $G^2 z = 0$ so that $0 = f(G^2 z_1, G^2 z_2) \preccurlyeq \alpha f(z_1, z_2)$ which shows that G^2 satisfies the requirement of Bryant theorem and z=0 is the unique fixed point of T.

4. Acknowledgement

The author is thankful to the referee for his valuable suggestions which improved the presentation of the paper.

References

- [1] F.ROUZKARD AND M.IMDAD, Some common fixed point theorems on complex valued metric spaces, *Computers and Mathematics with Applications*, **64**(2012), 1866–1874.
- [2] V.W.BRYANT, A Remark on a fixed point theorem for iterated mappings, *Amer. Math. Monthly*, 75(1968), 399–400.
- [3] W.SINTUNAVARAT AND P.KUMAM, Generalized common fixed point theorems in complex valued metric spaces and applications, *Journal of Inequalities and Applications*, **84**(2012), 2012:84.
- [4] A.AZAM,B.FISHER,M.KHAN, Common fixed point theorems in complex valued metric spaces, Num. Func. Anal. Opt., 32(2011), 243–253.
- [5] M.IMDAD, T.I.KHAN, On Common fixed point of pairwise coincidently commuting non-continuous mappings satisfying a rational inequality, *Bull. Calcutta Math. Soc.*, **93(4)**(2001), 263–268.
- [6] M.ABBAS, V.CAJBAIC, T.NAZIR AND S.RADENOVIC, Common fixed pointof mappings satisfying rational inequalities in ordered complex valued generalized metric spaces, *Afrika Matematika*, (2013), doi:10.1007.
- [7] P.DHIVYA AND M.MARUDAI, Common fixed point theorems for mappings satisfying a contractive condition of rational expression on a ordered complex partial metric spaces, *Cogent Mathematics*, (2017),4:1389622.
- [8] MS.KHAN, M.SWALEH AND S.SESSA, Fixed point theorems by altering distances between the points, *Bull Aust Math. Soc.*, **30**(1984), 1–9.
- [9] K. SAWANGSUP, W. SINTUNAVARAT, AND Y. J. CHO, Fixed point theorems for orthogonal *F*-contraction mappings on *O*-complete metric spaces, *J. Fixed Point Theorey Appl.*, **10**(2020), 22:10.
- [10] D. WARDOWSKI, Fixed points of a new type of contractive mappings in complete metric spaces, *Fixed Point Theory Appl.*, **94**(2012).



Common fixed point theorem satisfying rational contraction in complex valued dislocated metric space

- [11] L. N. MISHRA, S. K. TIWARI, V. N. MISHRA, I. A. KHAN, Unique Fixed Point Theorems for Generalized Contractive Mappings in Partial Metric Spaces, *Journal of Function Spaces*, 24(2015), Article ID 960827, 8 pages.
- [12] L. N. MISHRA, S. K. TIWARI, V. N. MISHRA, Fixed point theorems for generalized weakly S-contractive mappings in partial metric spaces, *Journal of Applied Analysis and Computation*, 04(2015), 600–612. doi:10.11948/2015047.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.



MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK

Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 228–238. http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/007

On solutions of the Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$

PAGDAME TIEBEKABE *1,2 AND ISMAÏLA DIOUF¹

¹ Cheikh Anta Diop University, Faculty of Science, Department of Mathematics and Computer science, Laboratory of Algebra, Cryptology, Algebraic Geometry and Applications (LACGAA) Dakar, Senegal.

² University of Kara, Sciences and Tecnologies Faculty (FaST), Department of Mathematics and Computer science, Kara, Togo. PoBOX: 43

Received 06 August 2021; Accepted 23 September 2021

Abstract. Let $(L_n)_{n\geq 0}$ be the Lucas sequence given by $L_0 = 2$, $L_1 = 1$ and $L_{n+2} = L_{n+1} + L_n$ for $n \geq 0$. In this paper, we are interested in finding all powers of three which are sums of two Lucas numbers, i.e., we study the exponential Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$ in nonnegative integers n, m, and a. The proof of our main theorem uses lower bounds for linear forms in logarithms, properties of continued fractions, and a version of the Baker-Davenport reduction method in Diophantine approximation.

AMS Subject Classifications: 11B39, 11J86

Keywords: Linear forms in logarithm, Diophantine equations, Fibonacci sequence, Lucas sequence, perfect powers.

Contents

1	Introduction	228	
2	Preliminaries		
	2.1 Generalities	229	
	2.2 Inequalities involving the Lucas numbers	230	
	2.3 Linear forms in logarithms and continued fractions	231	
3	Main Results	232	
4	Reducing of the bound on <i>n</i>	236	
5	Acknowledgement	237	

1. Introduction

The determination of perfect powers of Lucas and Fibonacci sequences does not date from today. The real contribution of determination of perfect powers of Lucas and Fibonacci sequences began in 2006. By classical and modular approaches of Diophantine equations, Bugeaud, Mignotte, and Siksek [5] defined all perfect powers of Lucas and Fibonacci sequences by solving the equations $F_n = y^p$ and $L_n = y^p$ respectively. From there, many researchers tackled similar problems. It is in the same thought that, others have determined the powers of 2 of the sum/difference of two Lucas numbers [3], powers of 2 of the sum/difference of Fibonacci numbers [4], powers of 2 and of 3 of the product of Pell numbers and Fibonacci numbers.

^{*}Corresponding author. Email addresses: pagdame.tiebekabe@ucad.edu.sn (Pagdame Tiebekabe), ismaila.diouf@ucad.edu.sn (Ismaila Diouf)

On solutions of the Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$

We move our interest on the powers of 3 as a sum of two Lucas numbers. This paper follows the following steps : We first give the generalities on binary linear recurrence, then we demonstrate an important inequality on Lucas numbers and finally determine and reduce a coarse bound by section 3. The section 4 is devoted to the reduction of the obtained bound in section 3 and discussion of possible different cases. We know from Bravo and Lucas [3] that the only solutions of the Diophantine equation $F_n + F_m = 2^a$ in positive integers n, m and a with $n \ge m$ are given by

$$2F_1 = 2, \quad 2F_2 = 2, \quad 2F_3 = 4, \quad 2F_6 = 16,$$

and

$$F_2 + F_1 = 2$$
, $F_4 + F_1 = F_4 + F_2 = 4$, $F_5 + F_4 = 8$, $F_7 + F_4 = 16$.

and in [4] that all solutions of the Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 2^a$ in nonnegative integers $n \ge m$ and a, are

$$2L_0 = 4$$
, $2L_1 = 2$, $2L_3 = 8$, $L_2 + L_1 = 4$, $L_4 + L_1 = 8$, and $L_7 + L_2 = 32$.

Here in this paper, we determine all the solutions of the following Diophantine equation:

$$L_n + L_m = 3^a \tag{1.1}$$

in nonnegative integers $n \ge m$ and a.

We are interested in finding all powers of three which are sums of two Lucas numbers, i.e., we study the exponential Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$ in nonnegative integers n, m, and a. The proof of our main theorem uses lower bounds for linear forms in logarithms, properties of continued fractions, and a version of the Baker-Davenport reduction method in Diophantine approximation.

We notice that many authors have already tackled this type of problems.

2. Preliminaries

2.1. Generalities

Definition 2.1. Let $k \ge 1$. The sequence $\{H_n\}_{n\ge 0} \subseteq \mathbb{C}$ is called a recurrent linear sequence of order k if the sequence satisfies

$$H_{n+k} = a_1 H_{n+k-1} + a_2 H_{n+k-2} + \dots + a_k H_n$$

for all $n \ge 0$ with $a_1, \ldots, a_k \in \mathbb{C}$, fixed.

We suppose that $a_k \neq 0$ (otherwise, the sequence $\{H_n\}_{n\geq 0}$ satisfies a recurrence of order less than k). If $a_1, \ldots, a_k \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $H_0, \ldots, H_{k-1} \in \mathbb{Z}$, then we can easily prove by induction on n that H_n is an integer for all $n \geq 0$. The polynomial

$$f(X) = X^{k} - a_1 X^{k-1} - a_2 X^{k-2} - \dots - a_k \in \mathbb{C},$$

is called the characteristic polynomial of $(H_n)_{n>0}$. We suppose that

$$f(X) = \prod_{i=1}^{m} (X - \alpha_i)^{\sigma_i}$$

where $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_m$ are distinct roots of f(X) with respectively $\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_m$ their multiplicities.

Definition 2.2. We define the sequences $(A_n)_{n>0}$ and $(B_n)_{n>0}$ for all positive integers \mathbb{N} by

$$\begin{cases} A_{n+2} = aA_{n+1} + A_n, A_0 = 0, A_1 = 1\\ B_{n+2} = aB_{n+1} + B_n, B_0 = 2, B_1 = a. \end{cases}$$

For a = 1, $(A_n)_{n \ge 0} = (F_n)_{n \ge 0}$ and $(B_n)_{n \ge 0} = (L_n)_{n \ge 0}$, which are Fibonacci and Lucas sequences respectively, defined above.



Pagdame Tiebekabe and Ismaïla Diouf

Remark 2.3. If k = 2, the sequence $(H_n)_{n\geq 0}$ is called a binary recurrent sequence. In this case, the characteristic polynomial is of the form

$$f(X) = X^{2} - a_{1}X - a_{2} = (X - \alpha_{1})(X - \alpha_{2}).$$

Suppose that $\alpha_1 \neq \alpha_2$, then $H_n = c_1 \alpha_1^n + c_2 \alpha_2^n$ for all $n \ge 0$.

Definition 2.4. The binary recurrent sequence $\{H_n\}_{n\geq 0}$ is said to be non degenerated if $c_1c_2\alpha_1\alpha_2 \neq 0$ and α_1/α_2 is not a root of unity.

Binet's formula for the general term of Fibonacci and Lucas sequences is obtained using standard methods for solving recurrent sequences, which are given by :

$$F_n = \frac{\alpha^n - \beta^n}{\alpha - \beta}$$
 and $L_n = \alpha^n + \beta^n$

where $(\alpha, \beta) = \left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}, \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)$ are the zeros of the characteristic polynomial $X^2 - X - 1$.

Definition 2.5. For all algebraic numbers γ , we define its measure by the following identity :

$$\mathbf{M}(\gamma) = |a_d| \prod_{i=1}^d \max\{1, |\gamma_i|\},$$

where γ_i are the roots of $f(x) = a_d \prod_{i=1}^d (x - \gamma_i)$ is the minimal polynomial of γ .

Let us define now another height, deduced from the last one, called the absolute logarithmic height. It is the most used one.

Definition 2.6. (Absolute logarithmic height)

For a non-zero algebraic number of degree d on \mathbb{Q} where the minimal polynomial on \mathbb{Z} is $f(x) = a_d \prod_{i=1}^{a} (x - \gamma_i)$, we denote by

$$h(\gamma) = \frac{1}{d} \left(\log |a_d| + \sum_{i=1}^d \log \max\{1, |\gamma_i|\} \right) = \frac{1}{d} \log \operatorname{M}(\gamma).$$

the usual logarithmic absolute height of γ .

The following properties of the logarithmic height, will also be used in the next section:

- $h(\gamma \pm \eta) \le h(\gamma) + h(\eta) + \log 2.$
- $h(\gamma \eta^{\pm 1}) \le h(\gamma) + h(\eta).$
- $h(\gamma^s) = |s|h(\gamma)$.

2.2. Inequalities involving the Lucas numbers

In this section, we state and prove important inequalities associated with the Lucas numbers that will be used in solving the equation (1.1).

Proposition 2.7. For $n \ge 2$, we have

$$0.94 \,\alpha^n < (1 - \alpha^{-6})\alpha^n \le L_n \le (1 + \alpha^{-4})\alpha^n < 1.15 \,\alpha^n \tag{2.1}$$

Proof. This follows directly from the formula $L_n = \alpha^n + (-1)^n \alpha^{-n}$.



On solutions of the Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$

2.3. Linear forms in logarithms and continued fractions

In order to prove our main result, we have to use a Baker-type lower bound several times for a non-zero linear forms of logarithms in algebraic numbers. There are many of these methods in the literature like that of Baker and Wüstholz in [1]. We recall the result of Bugeaud, Mignotte, and Siksek which is a modified version of the result of Matveev [8]. With the notation of section 2, Laurent, Mignotte, and Nesterenko [7] proved the following theorem:

Theorem 2.8. Let γ_1 , γ_2 be two non-zero algebraic numbers, and let $\log \gamma_1$ and $\log \gamma_2$ be any determination of their logarithms. Put $D = [\mathbb{Q}(\gamma_1, \gamma_2) : \mathbb{Q}] / [\mathbb{R}(\gamma_1, \gamma_2) : \mathbb{R}]$, and

$$\Gamma := b_2 \log \gamma_2 - b_1 \log \gamma_1,$$

where b_1 and b_2 are positive integers. Further, let A_1, A_2 be real numbers > 1 such that

$$\log A_i \ge \max\left\{h(\gamma_i), \frac{|\log \gamma_i|}{D}, \frac{1}{D}\right\}, \quad (i = 1, 2).$$

Then, assuming that γ_1 and γ_2 are mutiplicatively independent, we have

$$\log |\Gamma| > -30.9 \cdot D^4 \left(\max\left\{ \log b', \frac{21}{D}, \frac{1}{2} \right\} \right)^2 \log A_1 \cdot \log A_2$$

where

$$b' = \frac{b_1}{D \log A_2} + \frac{b_2}{D \log A_1}.$$

We shall also need the following theorem due to Matveev, Lemma due to Dujella and Pethő and Lemma due to Legendre [6, 8].

Theorem 2.9. (Matveev [8])

Let $n \ge 1$ an integer. Let \mathbb{L} a field of algebraic number of degree D. Let η_1, \ldots, η_l non-zero elements of \mathbb{L} and let b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_l integers,

$$B := \max\{|b_1|, \dots, |b_l|\},\$$

and

$$\Lambda := \eta_1^{b_1} \cdots \eta_l^{b_l} - 1 = \left(\prod_{i=1}^l \eta_i^{b_i}\right) - 1.$$

Let A_1, \ldots, A_l reals numbers such that

$$A_j \ge \max\{Dh(\eta_j), |\log(\eta_j)|, 0.16\}, 1 \le j \le l.$$

Assume that $\Lambda \neq 0$, So we have

$$\log |\Lambda| > -3 \times 30^{l+4} \times (l+1)^{5.5} \times d^2 \times A_1 \dots A_l (1 + \log D) (1 + \log nB)$$

Further, if \mathbb{L} *is real, then*

$$\log |\Lambda| > -1.4 \times 30^{l+3} \times (l)^{4.5} \times d^2 \times A_1 \dots A_l (1 + \log D) (1 + \log B).$$

During our calculations, we get upper bounds on our variables which are too large, so we have to reduce them. To do this, we use some results from the theory of continued fractions. In particular, for a non-homogeneous linear form with two integer variables, we use a slight variation of a result due to Dujella and Pethő, (1998) which is in itself a generalization of the result of Baker and Davemport [2].

For a real number X, we write $||X|| := \min\{|X - n| : n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ for the distance of X to the nearest integer.



Pagdame Tiebekabe and Ismaïla Diouf

Lemma 2.10. (Dujella and Pethő, [6])

Let M a positive integer, let p/q the convergent of the continued fraction expansion of κ such that q > 6Mand let A, B, μ real numbers such that A > 0 and B > 1. Let $\varepsilon := \|\mu q\| - M \|\kappa q\|$. If $\varepsilon > 0$ then there is no solution of the inequality

$$0 < m\kappa - n + \mu < AB^{-m}$$

in integers m and n with

$$\frac{\log(Aq/\varepsilon)}{\log B} \leqslant m \leqslant M.$$

Lemma 2.11. (Legendre)

Let τ real number such that x, y are integers such that

$$\left|\tau - \frac{x}{y}\right| < \frac{1}{2y^2}.$$

then $\frac{x}{y} = \frac{p_k}{q_k}$ is the convergence of τ .

Further,

$$\left|\tau - \frac{x}{y}\right| > \frac{1}{(q_{k+1}+2)y^2}.$$

3. Main Results

Our main result can be stated in the following theorem.

Theorem 3.1. The only solutions (n, m, a) of the exponential Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$ in nonnegative integers $n \ge m$ and a, are : (1, 0, 1) and (4, 0, 2)

i.e $L_1 + L_0 = 3$, and $L_4 + L_0 = 9$.

Proof. First, we study the case n = m, next we assume n > m and study the case $n \le 200$ with *SageMath* in the range $0 \le m < n \le 200$ and finally we study the case n > 200. Assume throughout that equation (1.1) holds. First of all, observe that if n = m, then the original equation (1.1) becomes

$$L_n = \frac{3^a}{2}.$$

This equation has no solution because, $\forall n > 0, L_n \in \mathbb{Z}$. So from now, we assume n > m. If $n \leq 200$, the search with *SageMath* in the range $0 \leq m < n \leq 200$ gives the solutions $(n, m, a) \in \{(1, 0, 1), (4, 0, 2)\}$. Now for the rest of the paper, we assume that n > 200. Let first get a relation between a

and n which is important for our purpose. Combining (1.1) and the right inequality of (2.1), we get:

$$3^{a} = L_{n} + L_{m} \le 2\alpha^{n} + 2\alpha^{m} < 2^{n+1} + 2^{m+1} = 2^{n+1}(1+2^{n-m}) \le 2^{n+1}(1+1/2) < 2^{n+2}$$

Taking log both sides, we obtain

$$a \log 3 \le (n+2) \log 2 \Longrightarrow a \le (n+2)c_1$$
 where $c_1 = \frac{\log 2}{\log 3}$.

Rewriting equation (1.1) as:

$$L_n + L_m = \alpha^n + \beta^n + L_m = 3^a \Longrightarrow \alpha^n - 3^a = -\beta^n - L_m.$$



On solutions of the Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$

Taking absolute value both sides, we get

$$|\alpha^n - 3^a| = |\beta^n + L_m| \le |\beta|^n + L_m < \frac{1}{2} + 2\alpha^m \quad \because |\beta|^n < \frac{1}{2}, \text{ and } L_m < 2\alpha^m.$$

Dividing both sides by α^n and considering that n > m, we get:

$$\left|1-\alpha^{-n}\cdot 3^{a}\right| < \frac{\alpha^{-n}}{2} + 2\alpha^{m-n} < \frac{1}{\alpha^{n-m}} + \frac{2}{\alpha^{n-m}} \quad \because \frac{1}{2\alpha^{n}} < \frac{1}{\alpha^{n-m}}; \quad n > m$$

Hence

$$\left|1 - \alpha^{-n} \cdot 3^a\right| < \frac{3}{\alpha^{n-m}} \tag{3.1}$$

Let's take

$$\gamma_1 := \alpha, \quad \gamma_2 := 3, \quad b_1 := n, \quad b_2 := a, \quad \Gamma := a \log 3 - n \log \alpha$$

in order to apply Theorem 2.8. Therefore equation (3.1) can be rewritten as:

$$\left|1-e^{\Gamma}\right| < \frac{3}{\alpha^{n-m}} \quad \text{where} \quad e^{\Gamma} = \alpha^{-n} 3^{a}.$$
 (3.2)

Since $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{5})$ is the algebraic number field containing γ_1, γ_2 ; so we can take D := 2. Using equation (1.1) and Binet formula for Lucas sequence, we have :

$$\alpha^n = L_n - \beta^n < L_n + 1 \le L_n + L_m = 3^a$$

which implies $1 < 3^a \alpha^{-n}$ and so $\Gamma > 0$. Combining this with (3.2), we get

$$0 < \Gamma < \frac{3}{\alpha^{n-m}} \tag{3.3}$$

where we used the fact that $x \le e^x - 1$, $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$. Applying log on right and left hand side of (3.3), we get

$$\log \Gamma < \log 3 - (n - m) \log \alpha. \tag{3.4}$$

Logarithm height of γ_1 and γ_2 are: $h(\gamma_1) = \frac{1}{2} \log \alpha = 0.2406 \cdots, h(\gamma_2) = \log 3 = 1.09862 \cdots$, thus we can choose

$$\log A_1 := 0.5$$
 and $\log A_2 := 1.1$.

Finally, by recalling that $a \leq (n+2)c_1$; $c_1 = 0.63093$, we get :

$$b' := \frac{b_1}{D\log A_2} + \frac{b_2}{D\log A_1} = \frac{n}{2.2} + a = 0.45n + a < 0.45n + (n+2)c_1 < 2n.$$

It is easy to see that α and 3 are multiplicatively independent. Then by Theorem 2.8, we have

$$\log \Gamma \ge -30.9 \cdot 2^4 \left(\max\left\{ \log(2n), \frac{21}{2}, \frac{1}{2} \right\} \right)^2 \cdot 0.5 \cdot 1.1$$
$$\log \Gamma > -272 \left(\max\left\{ \log(2n), \frac{21}{2}, \frac{1}{2} \right\} \right)^2.$$
(3.5)

Combining (3.4) and (3.5), we obtain the following important result

$$(n-m)\log\alpha < 276\left(\max\left\{\log(2n), \frac{21}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right\}\right)^2.$$
(3.6)



Pagdame Tiebekabe and Ismaïla Diouf

Let us find a second linear form in logarithm. For this, we rewrite (1.1) as follows:

$$\alpha^n (1 + \alpha^{n-m}) - 3^a = -\beta^n - \beta^m.$$

Taking absolute values in the above relation, we get

$$|\alpha^n(1+\alpha^{m-n})-3^a| < 2, \quad \beta = (1-\sqrt{5})/2, \quad |\beta|^n < 1 \quad \text{and} \quad |\beta|^m < 1; \forall n > 200, \quad m \ge 0.$$

Dividing both sides of the above inequality by $\alpha^n(1 + \alpha^{m-n})$, we obtain

$$\left|1 - 3^{a} \alpha^{-n} (1 + \alpha^{m-n})^{-1}\right| < \frac{2}{\alpha^{n}} \quad \text{i.e} \quad |\Lambda| < \frac{2}{\alpha^{n}}.$$
 (3.7)

All the conditions are now met to apply a Matveev's theorem (Theorem 2.9).

• Data:

$$t := 3; \quad \gamma_1 := 3; \quad \gamma_2 := \alpha; \quad \gamma_3 := 1 + \alpha^{m-n}$$

$$b_1 := a;$$
 $b_2 := -n, \quad b_3 = -1.$

As before, $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{5})$ contains $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3$ and has $D := [\mathbb{K} : \mathbb{Q}] = 2$. Before continuing with the calculations, let's check whether $\Lambda \neq 0$.

 $\Lambda \neq 0$ comes from the fact that if it was zero, we would have

$$3^a = \alpha^n + \alpha^m \tag{3.8}$$

Taking the conjugate of the above relation in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{5})$, we get :

$$3^a = \beta^n + \beta^m. \tag{3.9}$$

Combining (3.8) and (3.9), we get :

$$\alpha^n < \alpha^n + \alpha^m = |\beta^n + \beta^m| \le |\beta|^n + |\beta|^m < 2.$$

Recall that n > 200. This relation is impossible for n > 200. Hence $\Lambda \neq 0$.

• Calculation of $h(\gamma_3)$

Let us now estimate $h(\gamma_3)$ where $\gamma_3 = 1 + \alpha^{m-n}$

$$\gamma_3 = 1 + \alpha^{m-n} < 2$$
 and $\gamma^{-1} = \frac{1}{1 + \alpha^{m-n}} < 1$

so $|\log \gamma_3| < 1$. Notice that

$$h(\gamma_3) \le |m-n|\left(\frac{\log \alpha}{2}\right) + \log 2 = \log 2 + (n-m)\left(\frac{\log \alpha}{2}\right).$$


On solutions of the Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$

• The calculation of A_1 and A_2 gives :

$$A_1 := 2.2$$

and

$$A_2 := 0.5$$

and we can take

$$A_3 := 2 + (n-m)\log\alpha \quad \text{since} \quad h(\gamma_3) := \log 2 + (n-m)\left(\frac{\log\alpha}{2}\right)$$

• Calculation of B

Since $a < (n+2)c_1$, it follows that, $B = \max\{1, n, a\}$. Thus we can take B = n + 1.

The Matveev's theorem gives the lower bound on the left hand side of (3.7) by replacing the data. We get :

$$\exp\left(-C(1+\log(n+1))\cdot 2.2\cdot 0.5\cdot (2+(n-m)\log\alpha)\right)$$

where

$$C := 1.4 \cdot 30^6 \cdot 3^{4.5} \cdot 2^2 (1 + \log 2) < 9.7 \times 10^{11}.$$

Replacing in equation (3.7), we get:

$$\exp\left(-C(1+\log(n+1)) \cdot 2.2 \cdot 0.5 \cdot (2+(n-m)\log\alpha)\right) < |\Lambda| < \frac{2}{\alpha^n}$$

which leads to

$$n\log\alpha - \log 2 < C((1 + \log(n+1)) \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < 2C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n-m)\log\alpha) < C\log n \cdot 1.1 \cdot (2 + (n$$

then

$$n\log\alpha - \log 2 < 1.26 \times 10^{12}\log n \cdot (2 + (n - m)\log\alpha)$$
(3.10)

where we used inequality $1 + \log(n+1) < 2\log n$, which holds for n > 200.

Now, using (3.6) in the right term of the above inequality (3.10) and doing the related calculations, we get

$$n < 7.3 \times 10^{14} \log n \left(\max\left\{ \log(2n), \frac{21}{2} \right\} \right)^2.$$
 (3.11)

If $\max\{\log(2n), 21/2\} = 21/2$, it follows from (3.11) that $n < 8.04825 \cdot 10^{16} \log n \implies n < 3.5 \cdot 10^{18}$. On the other hand, if $\max\{\log(2n), 21/2\} = \log(2n)$, then from (3.11), we get $n < 7.3 \cdot 10^{14} \log n \log^2(2n)$ and so $n < 7.2 \cdot 10^{19}$. We can easily see that for the two possible values of $\max\{\log(2n), 21/2\}$, $n < 7.2 \cdot 10^{19}$.

All the calculations done so far can be summarized in the following lemma.

Lemma 3.2. If (n, m, a) is a solution in positive integers of (1.1) with conditions n > m and n > 200, then inequalities

$$a \le n + 2 < 1.2 \times 10^{20}$$
 hold.



Pagdame Tiebekabe and Ismaïla Diouf

4. Reducing of the bound on n

Dividing across inequality (3.3): $0 < a \log 3 - n \log \alpha < \frac{3}{\alpha^{n-m}}$ by $\log \alpha$, we get

$$0 < a\gamma - n < \frac{7}{\alpha^{n-m}}; \text{ where } \gamma := \frac{\log 3}{\log \alpha}.$$
 (4.1)

The continued fraction of the irrational number γ is :

(

 $[a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots] = [1, 2, 3, 1, 1, 2, 3, 2, 4, 2, 1, 11, 2, 1, 11, \dots]$

and let denote p_k/q_k its convergent. An inspection using SageMath gives the following inequality

 $4977896525362041575 = q_{41} < 1.2 \times 10^{20} < q_{42} = 805929983250536127817.$

Furthermore, $a_M := \max \{a_i | i = 0, 1, ..., 42\} = 161$ Now applying Lemma 2.11 and properties of continued fractions, we obtain

$$|a\gamma - n| > \frac{1}{(a_M + 2)a}.$$
 (4.2)

Combining equation (4.1) and (4.2), we get

$$\frac{1}{(a_M+2)a} < |a\gamma - n| < \frac{7}{\alpha^{n-m}} \Longrightarrow \frac{1}{(a_M+2)a} < \frac{7}{\alpha^{n-m}} \Longrightarrow \alpha^{n-m} < 7 \cdot (161+2)a < 1.3692 \cdot 10^{23}.$$

Applying log above and divide by $\log \alpha$, we get :

$$(n-m) \le \frac{\log\left(7 \cdot 163 \cdot a\right)}{\log \alpha} < 111.$$

To improve the upper bound on n, let consider

$$z := a \log 3 - n \log \alpha - \log \rho(u) \quad \text{where} \quad \rho = 1 + \alpha^{-u}.$$
(4.3)

From (3.7), we have

$$|1 - e^z| < \frac{2}{\alpha^n}.\tag{4.4}$$

Since $\Lambda \neq 0$, then $z \neq 0$. Two cases arise : z < 0 and z > 0. For each case, we will apply Lemma 2.10.

• Case 1 : z > 0

From (4.4), we obtain $0 < z \le e^z - 1 < \frac{2}{\alpha^n}$. Replacing (4.3) in the above inequality, we get:

$$0 < a \log 3 - n \log \alpha - \log \rho(n-m) \le 3^a \alpha^{-n} \rho(n-m)^{-1} - 1 < 2\alpha^{-n}$$

hence

$$0 < a \log 3 - n \log \alpha - \log \rho(n-m) < 2\alpha^{-n}$$

and by diving above inequality by $\log \alpha$

$$0 < a\left(\frac{\log 3}{\log \alpha}\right) - n - \frac{\log \rho(n-m)}{\log \alpha} < 5 \cdot \alpha^{-n}.$$
(4.5)

Taking, $\gamma := \frac{\log 3}{\log \alpha}$, $\mu := -\frac{\log \rho(n-m)}{\log \alpha}$, A := 5, $B := \alpha$, inequality (4.5) becomes

$$0 < a\gamma - n + \mu < AB^{-n}.$$



On solutions of the Diophantine equation $L_n + L_m = 3^a$

Since γ is irrational, we are now ready to apply lemma 2.10 of Dujella and Pethö on (4.5) for $n - m \in \{1, ..., 111\}$.

Since $a \le 1.2 \times 10^{20}$ from lemma 3.2, we can take $M = 1.2 \times 10^{20}$, and we get

$$n < \frac{\log(Aq/\varepsilon)}{\log B}$$
 where $q > 6M$

and q is the denominator of the convergent of the irrational number γ such that $\varepsilon := ||\mu q|| - M||\gamma q|| > 0$. With the help of *SageMath*, with conditions z > 0, and (n, m, a) a possible zero of (1.1), we get n < 112 which contradicts our assumption n > 200. Then it is false.

• Case 2 : *z* < 0

Since n > 200, then $\frac{2}{\alpha^n} < \frac{1}{2}$. Hence (4.4) implies that $|1 - e^{|z|}| < 2$. Also, since z < 0, we have

$$0 < |z| \le e^{|z|} - 1 = e^{|z|} |e^{|z|} - 1| < \frac{4}{\alpha^n}.$$

Replacing (4.3) in the above inequality and dividing by $\log 3$, we get:

$$0 < n\left(\frac{\log\alpha}{\log3}\right) - a + \frac{\rho(n-m)}{\log3} < \frac{4}{\log3} \cdot \alpha^{-n} < 4 \cdot \alpha^{-n}$$
(4.6)

In order to apply lemma 3.2 on (4.6) for $n - m \in \{1, 2, ..., 111\}$, let's take again $M = 1.2 \times 10^{20}$. With the help of *SageMath*, with conditions z < 0, and (n, m, a) a possible zero of (1.1), we get n < 111 which contradicts our assumption n > 200. Then it is false.

This completes the proof of our main result (Theorem 3.1).

5. Acknowledgement

The author is thankful to the referee for his valuable suggestions which improved the presentation of the paper. The authors also thank the professor Maurice Mignotte for his remarks and diponibility.

References

- [1] A. BAKER AND G. WÜSTHOLZ, Logarithmic and Diophantine Geometry, Vol 9 New Mathematical Monographs (Cambridge University Press), 2007.
- [2] A. BAKER AND H. DAVENPORT, The equations $3x^2 2 = y^2$ and $8x^2 7 = z^2$, Quart. J. Math. Oxford Ser., 20 (1969), 129-137.
- [3] J. J. BRAVO AND F. LUCAS, Powers of Two as Sums of Two Lucas Numbers, *Journal of Integers Sequences*, 17(2014) Article 14.8.3
- [4] J.J. BRAVO AND F. LUCA, On the Diophantine Equation $F_n + F_m = 2^a$, Quaestiones Mathematicae, **39(3)**(2016), 391–400.
- [5] Y. BUGEAUD, M. MIGNOTTE, AND S. SIKSEK, Classical and modular approaches to exponential Diophantine equations. I. Fibonacci and Lucas perfect powers, *Ann. of Math.*, **163**(2006), 969-1018.
- [6] A. DUJELLA AND A. PETHÖ, A generalization of a theorem of Baker and Davenport, Quart. J. Math. Oxford Ser., 49(195)(1998), 291-306.



Pagdame Tiebekabe and Ismaïla Diouf

- [7] M. LAURENT, M. MIGNOTTE, AND Y. NESTERENKO, Formes linéaires en deux logarithmes et déterminants d'interpolation, (French) (Linear forms in two logarithms and interpolation determinants), J. Number Theory, 55(1995), 285-321.
- [8] E. M. MATVEEV, An explicit lower bound for a homogeneous rational linear form in the logarithms of algebraic numbers, II, *Izv. Ross. Akad. Nauk Ser. Mat.*, 64(2000), 125-180. *Translation in Izv. Math.*, 64(2000), 1217-1269.
- [9] PAGDAME TIEBEKABE AND ISMAÏLA DIOUF, On solutions of the Diophantine equations $F_{n_1} + F_{n_2} + F_{n_3} + F_{n_4} = 2^a$, Journal of Algebra and Related Topics, Accepted to On-line Publish, 2021.
- [10] PAGDAME TIEBEKABE AND ISMAÏLA DIOUF, Powers of Three as Difference of Two Fibonacci Numbers, JP Journal of Algebra, Number Theory and Applications, **49**(2)(2021), 185–196.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.



MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK

Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 239–250. http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/008

A characterization of involutes of a given curve in \mathbb{E}^3 via directional q-frame

MÜNEVVER YILDIRIM YILMAZ *1 AND ESRA ERDEM²

^{1,2} Faculty of Science, Department of Mathematics, Firat University, Elazığ, Turkey.

Received 12 June 2021; Accepted 17 September 2021

Abstract. The orthogonal trajectories of the first tangents of the curve are called the involutes of α . In the present study, we obtain a characterization of involute curves of order k of the given curve α using directional q-frame. In virtue of the formulas, some results are obtained.

AMS Subject Classifications: Primary 53a04; Secondary 53C26.

Keywords: Frenet curve, Frenet frame, involute curve, directional q-frame.

Contents

1	Introduction	239
2	Preliminaries	240
3	Involutes of order 1 st. and order 2 nd. in \mathbb{E}^3 according to projection vector	240

1. Introduction

In differential geometry, there are many significant results and properties of curves. In the light of numerous studies authors introduce new works by using frame fields. The directional q- frame field is known as one of the frame field of the differential geometry. The q-frame has some useful advantages comparing to the other well-known frames Frenet and Bishop. One can define and calculate this frame even along a line ($\kappa = 0$). Dede et al. offered the directional q-frame along a space curve to built a tubular surface. They obtained a parametric representation of a directional tubular surface using the q-frame [1].

Involutes of a curve is another attractive research subject among geometers. The idea of a string involute is due to C. Huygens (1658), who is also known as on optician. He discovered involutes trying to build a more accurate clock [2]. There are many brillant works on involutes of a given curve in different aspects. For instance, Frenet frame of involute-evolute couple in the space \mathbb{E}^3 were given in [3]. T. Soyfidan and M. A. Güngör studied a quaternionic curve Euclidean 4-space \mathbb{E}^4 and gave the on the quaternionic involute-evolute curves for quaternionic curve [4]. Another is As and Sarioğlugil study's. They obtained on the Bishop curvatures of involute-evolute curve couple in \mathbb{E}^3 [5].

In this paper, the characterization of involutes of the 1 st. and 2 nd. order of a curve are given and proved in \mathbb{E}^3 by the help of directional q-frame.

^{*}Corresponding author. Email address: munyildirim@firat.edu.tr ("Münevver YILDIRIM YILMAZ")

2. Preliminaries

There are a number of different adapted frames along a space curve, like the parallel transport frame [6, 7] and the Frenet frame [8]. The Frenet frame is the most well-known frame along a space curve. Let α (s) be a space curve with a non-vanishing second derivative. The Frenet frame is described as follows:

$$t = \frac{\alpha^{'}}{\|\alpha^{'}\|}, \quad b = \frac{\alpha^{'} \wedge \alpha^{''}}{\|\alpha^{'} \wedge \alpha^{''}\|}, \quad n = b \wedge t$$

The curvature κ and the torsion τ are obtain by;

$$\kappa = \frac{\left\|\boldsymbol{\alpha}' \wedge \boldsymbol{\alpha}''\right\|}{\left\|\boldsymbol{\alpha}'\right\|^3}, \quad \tau = \frac{\det\left(\boldsymbol{\alpha}', \boldsymbol{\alpha}'', \boldsymbol{\alpha}'''\right)}{\left\|\boldsymbol{\alpha}' \wedge \boldsymbol{\alpha}''\right\|^2}$$

The well-known Frenet formulas are obtain by;

$$\begin{bmatrix} t^{'} \\ n^{'} \\ b^{'} \end{bmatrix} = \varphi \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \kappa & 0 \\ -\kappa & 0 & \tau \\ 0 & -\tau & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where $\varphi = \left\| \alpha^{'}\left(s \right) \right\|$.

As an alternative to the Frenet frame they define a new adapted frame along a space curve, the q-frame [1]. Dede et al. defined the directional q-frame along a space curve [9]. The directional q-frame offers two key advantages over the Frenet Frame [10, 11]: a) it is well defined even if the curve has vanishing second derivative [12], b) it avoid the redundant twist around the tangent.

The directional q-frame of a regular curve $\alpha(s)$ is obtained by;

$$t = \frac{\alpha'}{\|\alpha'\|}, \quad n_q = \frac{t \wedge k}{\|t \wedge k\|}, \quad b_q = t \wedge n_q \tag{1}$$

where k is the projection vector.

The varitation equations of the directional q-frame is obtained by;

$$\begin{bmatrix} t'\\ n'_{q}\\ b'_{q} \end{bmatrix} = \left\| \alpha' \right\| \begin{bmatrix} 0 & k_{1} & k_{2}\\ -k_{1} & 0 & k_{3}\\ -k_{2} & -k_{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
(2)

where the q-curvatures are expressed as follows:

$$k_1 = \frac{\left\langle t', n_q \right\rangle}{\|\alpha'\|}, \quad k_2 = \frac{\left\langle t', b_q \right\rangle}{\|\alpha'\|}, \quad k_3 = -\frac{\left\langle n_q, b'_q \right\rangle}{\|\alpha'\|}. \tag{3}$$

[9].

3. Involutes of order 1 st. and order 2 nd. in \mathbb{E}^3 according to projection vector

As is well known q-frame is defined by the help of the projection vector k. For simplicity firstly we have choosen the projection vector k = (0; 0; 1). For the cases t and k are parallel, the projection vector can be chosen as



k = (0; 1; 0), k = (1; 0; 0) (see [9]). This part we classified the q-frame into three types: z axis directional q-frames identified with the projection vector k = (0; 0; 1) (see Theorem 3.1 and 3.2), y axis directional q-frames identified with the projection vector k = (0; 1; 0) (see Theorem 3.3 and 3.4) and x axis directional q-frames identified with the projection vector k = (1; 0; 0) (see Theorem 3.5 and 3.6).

Definition 3.1. Let $\alpha = \alpha(s)$ be a regular generic curve in \mathbb{E}^n given with the arclength parameter s (i.e., $\|\alpha'(s)\| = 1$). Then the curves which are orthogonal to the system of k-dimensional osculating hyperplanes of α , are called the involutes of order k [13] of the curve α . For simplicity, we call the involutes of order 1, simply the involutes of the given curve [14].

The theorems below are given by taking k = (0; 0; 1).

Theorem 3.1. Let $\alpha = \alpha(s)$ be a regular curve in \mathbb{E}^3 and any curve $\overline{\alpha}(s)$ be first order involute of $\alpha(s)$. Then q-curvatures $\overline{k_1}, \overline{k_2}$ and $\overline{k_3}$ of the involute $\overline{\alpha}$ of the curve α are obtain by

$$\overline{k_1} = -\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}, \quad \overline{k_2} = \frac{\left[k_1^{'}k_2 - k_2^{'}k_1\right] - \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3 \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}{\|\alpha'\| \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]},$$
$$\overline{k_2} = 0$$

Proof:

$$s \to \alpha(s) \to \sum_{i=1}^{3} \alpha_i(s) e_i \quad (1 \le i \le 3)$$

by using statement we obtain that

$$\overline{\alpha}(s) = \alpha(s) + \lambda(s) t(s)$$

we by using (2), differentiate this equation respect to s, we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \alpha'(s) + \lambda'(s)t(s) + \lambda(s) \left\| \alpha' \right\| [k_1n_q + k_2b_q]$$

 $\langle \overline{\alpha}'(s), t(s) \rangle = 0$

Since

and

$$\alpha^{'}\left(s\right)=\left\Vert \alpha^{'}\right\Vert t\left(s\right)$$

we write

 $\lambda\left(s\right) = c - \left\|\alpha\right\|$

So, we get

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \alpha'(s) - \|\alpha'\| t(s) + (c - \|\alpha\|) \|\alpha'\| [k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q]$$

$$= (c - \|\alpha\|) \|\alpha'\| [k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q]$$
(4)

Using norm of the equation (4), we get

$$\left\|\overline{\alpha}'\left(s\right)\right\| = \left(c - \|\alpha\|\right)\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2} \left\|\alpha'\right\|$$
(5)

and by using the equations (1), (4) and (5), we get

$$\bar{t}(s) = \frac{[k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q]}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(6)



if we have chosen the projection vector k = (0; 0; 1)

$$\bar{t} \wedge k = \frac{k_1 t}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(7)

Hence, by taking norm of equation (7), we get

$$\|\bar{t} \wedge k\| = \sqrt{\frac{k_1^2}{\left(\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}\right)^2}}$$
(8)

Moreover, using the equations (1), (7) and (8), we have

$$\overline{n_q}\left(s\right) = t \tag{9}$$

In addition, using the equations (6), and (9)

$$\bar{t} \wedge \overline{n_q} = \frac{k_2 n_q - k_1 b_q}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}} \tag{10}$$

Therefore, from (1) and (10), we get

$$\overline{b_q}(s) = \frac{k_2 n_q - k_1 b_q}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(11)

Consequently, by using the equations (3), we obtain

$$\overline{k_1} = -\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}$$
(12)

$$\overline{k_2} = \frac{\left[k_1'k_2 - k_2'k_1\right] - \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3 \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}{\|\alpha'\| \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}$$
(13)

$$\overline{k_3} = 0 \tag{14}$$

This completes the proof.

Theorem 3.2. Let $\alpha = \alpha(s)$ be a regular curve in \mathbb{E}^3 and any curve $\overline{\alpha}(s)$ be second order involute of $\alpha(s)$. Then q-curvatures $\overline{k_1}, \overline{k_2}$ and $\overline{k_3}$ of the involute $\overline{\alpha}$ of the curve α are vanishes.

$$\overline{k_1}=0, \quad \overline{k_2}=0, \quad \overline{k_3}=0$$

Proof:

$$s \to \alpha(s) \to \sum_{i=1}^{3} \alpha_i(s) e_i \quad (1 \le i \le 3)$$

by using statement we obtain that

$$\overline{\alpha}(s) = \alpha(s) + \lambda_1(s) t(s) + \lambda_2(s) n_q(s)$$

we by using (2), differentiate this equation respect to s, we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \alpha'(s) + \lambda_1'(s)t(s) + \lambda_1(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| [k_1n_q + k_2b_q] + \lambda_2'(s)n_q(s) - \lambda_2(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_1t + \lambda_2(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3b_q$$



Since

$$\left\langle \overline{\alpha}^{'}\left(s
ight),t\left(s
ight)
ight
angle =0, \quad \left\langle \overline{\alpha}^{'}\left(s
ight),n_{q}\left(s
ight)
ight
angle =0$$

and

$$\alpha^{'}\left(s\right) = \left\|\alpha^{'}\right\|t\left(s\right)$$

So, we get

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \left\| \alpha' \right\| \left[\lambda_1 k_2 + \lambda_2 k_3 \right] b_q$$

 $\lambda_1 k_2 = \theta(s), \quad \lambda_2 k_3 = \varphi(s)$

if we take

we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \left\| \alpha' \right\| \left[\theta(s) + \varphi(s) \right] b_q \tag{15}$$

Using norm of the equation (15), we get

$$\left\|\overline{\alpha}'\left(s\right)\right\| = \sqrt{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right]^2} \tag{16}$$

and by using the equations (1), (15) and (16), we attain

$$\bar{t}(s) = \frac{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right] b_q}{\sqrt{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right]^2}} = b_q$$
(17)

if we have chosen the projection vector k = (0; 0; 1)

$$\bar{t} \wedge k = 0 \tag{18}$$

Hence, by taking norm of equation (18), we get

$$\left\| \bar{t} \wedge k \right\| = 0 \tag{19}$$

Moreover, using the equations (1), (18) and (19), we have

$$\overline{n_q}\left(s\right) = 0\tag{20}$$

In addition, using the equations (17), and (20)

$$\overline{t} \wedge \overline{n_q} = 0 \tag{21}$$

Therefore, from (1) and (21), we get

$$\overline{b_q}\left(s\right) = 0\tag{22}$$

Consequently, by using the equations (3), we obtain

$$\overline{k_1} = 0 \tag{23}$$

$$\overline{k_2} = 0 \tag{24}$$

$$\overline{k_3} = 0 \tag{25}$$

This completes the proof.



The theorems below are given by taking k = (0; 1; 0).

Theorem 3.3. Let $\alpha = \alpha(s)$ be a regular curve in \mathbb{E}^3 and any curve $\overline{\alpha}(s)$ be first order involute of $\alpha(s)$. Then q-curvatures $\overline{k_1}, \overline{k_2}$ and $\overline{k_3}$ of the involute $\overline{\alpha}$ of the curve α are obtain by

$$\overline{k_1} = \sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}, \quad \overline{k_2} = \frac{\left[k_2'k_1 - k_2k_1'\right] + \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3 \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}{\|\alpha'\| \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]},$$
$$\overline{k_3} = 0$$

Proof:

$$s \to \alpha(s) \to \sum_{i=1}^{3} \alpha_i(s) e_i \quad (1 \le i \le 3)$$

by using statement we obtain that

$$\overline{\alpha}\left(s\right) = \alpha\left(s\right) + \lambda\left(s\right)t\left(s\right)$$

we by using (2), differentiate this equation respect to s, we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}^{'}(s) = \alpha^{'}(s) + \lambda^{'}(s)t(s) + \lambda(s) \left\|\alpha^{'}\right\| \left[k_{1}n_{q} + k_{2}b_{q}\right]$$

Since

and

$$\alpha^{'}\left(s\right) = \left\|\alpha^{'}\right\|t\left(s\right)$$

 $\left\langle \overline{\alpha}^{'}\left(s\right),t\left(s\right)\right\rangle =0$

we write

$$\lambda \left(s\right) =c-\left\Vert \alpha \right\Vert$$

So, we get

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \alpha'(s) - \|\alpha'\| t(s) + (c - \|\alpha\|) \|\alpha'\| [k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q]$$
$$= (c - \|\alpha\|) \|\alpha'\| [k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q]$$
(26)

Using norm of the equation (26), we get

$$\left\|\overline{\alpha}'(s)\right\| = (c - \|\alpha\|) \sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2} \left\|\alpha'\right\|$$
(27)

and by using the equations (1), (26) and (27), we get

$$\bar{t}(s) = \frac{[k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q]}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(28)

if we have chosen the projection vector k = (0; 1; 0)

$$\bar{t} \wedge k = \frac{-k_2 t}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(29)

Hence, by taking norm of equation (29), we get

$$\|\bar{t} \wedge k\| = \sqrt{\frac{k_2^2}{\left(\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}\right)^2}}$$
(30)



Moreover, using the equations (1), (29) and (30), we have

$$\overline{n_q}(s) = -t \tag{31}$$

In addition, using the equations (28), and (31)

$$\bar{t} \wedge \bar{n_q} = \frac{-k_2 n_q + k_1 b_q}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(32)

Therefore, from (1) and (32), we get

$$\overline{b_q}(s) = \frac{-k_2 n_q + k_1 b_q}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(33)

Consequently, by using the equations (3), we obtain

$$\overline{k_1} = \sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2} \tag{34}$$

$$\overline{k_2} = \frac{\left[k_2'k_1 - k_2k_1'\right] + \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3 \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}$$
(35)

$$\overline{k_3} = 0 \tag{36}$$

This completes the proof.

Theorem 3.4. Let $\alpha = \alpha(s)$ be a regular curve in \mathbb{E}^3 and any curve $\overline{\alpha}(s)$ be second order involute of $\alpha(s)$. Then q-curvatures $\overline{k_1}, \overline{k_2}$ and $\overline{k_3}$ of the involute $\overline{\alpha}$ of the curve α are obtain by

$$\overline{k_1} = k_2, \quad \overline{k_2} = k_3, \quad \overline{k_3} = k_1$$

Proof:

$$s \to \alpha(s) \to \sum_{i=1}^{3} \alpha_i(s) e_i \quad (1 \le i \le 3)$$

by using statement we obtain that

$$\overline{\alpha}(s) = \alpha(s) + \lambda_1(s) t(s) + \lambda_2(s) n_q(s)$$

we by using (2), differentiate this equation respect to s, we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \alpha'(s) + \lambda_1'(s)t(s) + \lambda_1(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[k_1n_q + k_2b_q\right] \\ + \lambda_2'(s)n_q(s) - \lambda_2(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_1t + \lambda_2(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3b_q$$

Since

$$\left\langle \overline{\alpha}^{'}\left(s\right),t\left(s\right)
ight
angle =0,\ \left\langle \overline{\alpha}^{'}\left(s\right),n_{q}\left(s\right)
ight
angle =0$$

and

$$\alpha^{'}(s) = \left\|\alpha^{'}\right\|t(s)$$

So, we get

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \left\| \alpha' \right\| \left[\lambda_1 k_2 + \lambda_2 k_3 \right] b_q$$

if we take

$$\lambda_1 k_2 = \theta(s), \quad \lambda_2 k_3 = \varphi(s)$$



we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \left\| \alpha' \right\| \left[\theta(s) + \varphi(s) \right] b_q \tag{37}$$

Using norm of the equation (37), we get

$$\left\|\overline{\alpha}'\left(s\right)\right\| = \sqrt{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right]^2} \tag{38}$$

and by using the equations (1), (37) and (38), we attain

$$\bar{t}(s) = \frac{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right] b_q}{\sqrt{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right]^2}} = b_q$$
(39)

if we have chosen the projection vector k = (0; 1; 0)

$$\overline{t} \wedge k = -t \tag{40}$$

Hence, by taking norm of equation (40), we get

$$\left\|\bar{t} \wedge k\right\| = 1 \tag{41}$$

Moreover, using the equations (1), (40) and (41), we have

$$\overline{n_q}\left(s\right) = -t\tag{42}$$

In addition, using the equations (39), and (42)

$$\overline{t} \wedge \overline{n_q} = -n_q \tag{43}$$

Therefore, from (1) and (43), we get

$$\overline{b_q}\left(s\right) = -n_q \tag{44}$$

Consequently, by using the equations (3), we obtain

$$\overline{k_1} = k_2 \tag{45}$$

$$\overline{k_2} = k_3 \tag{46}$$

$$\overline{k_3} = k_1 \tag{47}$$

This completes the proof.

The theorems below are given by taking k = (1; 0; 0).

Theorem 3.5. Let $\alpha = \alpha(s)$ be a regular curve in \mathbb{E}^3 and any curve $\overline{\alpha}(s)$ be first order involute of $\alpha(s)$. Then q-curvatures $\overline{k_1}, \overline{k_2}$ and $\overline{k_3}$ of the involute $\overline{\alpha}$ of the curve α are obtain by

$$\overline{k_1} = \frac{\left[k_1'k_2 - k_1k_2'\right] - \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3 \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}{\|\alpha'\| \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}, \quad \overline{k_2} = \sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}, \\ \overline{k_3} = 0$$

Proof:

$$s \to \alpha(s) \to \sum_{i=1}^{3} \alpha_i(s) e_i \quad (1 \le i \le 3)$$



by using statement we obtain that

$$\overline{\alpha}\left(s\right) = \alpha\left(s\right) + \lambda\left(s\right)t\left(s\right)$$

we by using (2), differentiate this equation respect to s, we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \alpha'(s) + \lambda'(s)t(s) + \lambda(s) \left\| \alpha' \right\| \left[k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q \right]$$

Since

 $\left\langle \overline{\alpha}^{^{\prime}}\left(s
ight) ,t\left(s
ight)
ight
angle =0$

 $\alpha^{'}\left(s\right)=\left\|\alpha^{'}\right\|t\left(s\right)$

we write

 $\lambda \left(s \right) = c - \left\| \alpha \right\|$

So, we get

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \alpha'(s) - \|\alpha'\| t(s) + (c - \|\alpha\|) \|\alpha'\| [k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q] = (c - \|\alpha\|) \|\alpha'\| [k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q]$$
(48)

Using norm of the equation (48), we get

$$\left\|\overline{\alpha}'\left(s\right)\right\| = \left(c - \|\alpha\|\right)\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2} \left\|\alpha'\right\|$$
(49)

and by using the equations (1), (48) and (49), we get

$$\bar{t}(s) = \frac{[k_1 n_q + k_2 b_q]}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(50)

if we have chosen the projection vector k = (1; 0; 0)

$$\bar{t} \wedge k = \frac{[k_2 n_q - k_1 b_q]}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(51)

Hence, by taking norm of equation (51), we get

$$\|\bar{t} \wedge k\| = \sqrt{\frac{k_1^2}{\left(\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}\right)^2}}$$
(52)

Moreover, using the equations (1), (51) and (52), we have

$$\overline{n_q}(s) = \frac{[k_2 n_q - k_1 b_q]}{\sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}}$$
(53)

In addition, using the equations (50), and (53)

$$\overline{t} \wedge \overline{n_q} = t \tag{54}$$

Therefore, from (1) and (54), we get

$$\overline{b_q}\left(s\right) = t \tag{55}$$

Consequently, by using the equations (3), we obtain

$$\overline{k_1} = \frac{\left[k_1'k_2 - k_1k_2'\right] - \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3 \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}{\|\alpha'\| \left[k_1^2 + k_2^2\right]}$$
(56)



$$\overline{k_2} = \sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}$$
(57)

$$\overline{k_3} = 0 \tag{58}$$

This completes the proof

Theorem 3.6. Let $\alpha = \alpha(s)$ be a regular curve in \mathbb{E}^3 and any curve $\overline{\alpha}(s)$ be second order involute of $\alpha(s)$. Then q-curvatures $\overline{k_1}, \overline{k_2}$ and $\overline{k_3}$ of the involute $\overline{\alpha}$ of the curve α are obtain by

$$\overline{k_1} = -k_3, \quad \overline{k_2} = k_2, \quad \overline{k_3} = k_1$$

Proof:

$$s \to \alpha(s) \to \sum_{i=1}^{3} \alpha_i(s) e_i \quad (1 \le i \le 3)$$

by using statement we obtain that

$$\overline{\alpha}(s) = \alpha(s) + \lambda_1(s) t(s) + \lambda_2(s) n_q(s)$$

we by using (2), differentiate this equation respect to s, we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \alpha'(s) + \lambda_1'(s)t(s) + \lambda_1(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[k_1n_q + k_2b_q\right] \\ + \lambda_2'(s)n_q(s) - \lambda_2(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_1t + \lambda_2(s) \left\|\alpha'\right\| k_3b_q$$

Since

$$\langle \overline{\alpha}'(s), t(s) \rangle = 0, \quad \langle \overline{\alpha}'(s), n_q(s) \rangle = 0$$

and

$$\alpha^{'}\left(s\right) = \left\|\alpha^{'}\right\|t\left(s\right)$$

So, we get

$$\overline{\alpha}'\left(s\right) = \left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\lambda_1 k_2 + \lambda_2 k_3\right] b_q$$

if we take

$$\lambda_1 k_2 = \theta(s), \quad \lambda_2 k_3 = \varphi(s)$$

we obtain

$$\overline{\alpha}'(s) = \left\| \alpha' \right\| \left[\theta(s) + \varphi(s) \right] b_q \tag{59}$$

Using norm of the equation (59), we get

$$\left\|\overline{\alpha}'\left(s\right)\right\| = \sqrt{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right]^2} \tag{60}$$

and by using the equations (1), (59) and (60), we attain

$$\bar{t}(s) = \frac{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right] b_q}{\sqrt{\left\|\alpha'\right\| \left[\theta\left(s\right) + \varphi\left(s\right)\right]^2}} = b_q$$
(61)

if we have chosen the projection vector k = (1; 0; 0)

$$\bar{t} \wedge k = n_q \tag{62}$$



Hence, by taking norm of equation (62), we get

$$\left\|\bar{t} \wedge k\right\| = 1 \tag{63}$$

Moreover, using the equations (1), (62) and (63), we have

$$\overline{n_q}\left(s\right) = n_q \tag{64}$$

In addition, using the equations (61), and (64)

$$\overline{t} \wedge \overline{n_q} = -t \tag{65}$$

Therefore, from (1) and (65), we get

$$\overline{b_q}\left(s\right) = -t\tag{66}$$

Consequently, by using the equations (3), we obtain

 $\overline{k_1} = -k_3 \tag{67}$

$$\overline{k_2} = k_2 \tag{68}$$

$$k_3 = k_1 \tag{69}$$

This completes the proof.

References

- M. DEDE, C. EKICI AND H. TOZAK, Directional tubular surfaces, *International Journal of Algebra*, 9(2015), 527–535.
- [2] C. BOYER, A History of Mathematics, New York: Wiley, 1968.
- [3] H. H. HACISALIHOĞLU, Hareket Geometrisi ve Kuaterniyonlar Teorisi, Gazi Universitesi, Fen-Edebiyat Fakultesi Yayinlari 2, 1983.
- [4] T. SOYFIDAN AND M. A. GÜNGÖR, On the Quaternionic involute-evolute curves, arXiv: 1311. 0621 [math. GT], 2013.
- [5] E. AS AND A. SARIOĞLUGIL, On the Bishop curvatures of involute-evolute curve couple in \mathbb{E}^3 , *International Journal of Physical Sciences*, **9**(7)(2014), 140–145.
- [6] R.L. BISHOP, There is more than one way to frame a curve, Am. Math. Mon., 82(3)(1975), 246–251.
- [7] S. YILMAZ AND M. TURGUT, A new version of Bishop frame and an application to spherical images, *J. Math. Anal. Appl.*, **371**(2010), 764–776.
- [8] P.M. DO CARMO, Differential Geometry of Curves and Surfaces, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, 1976.
- [9] M. DEDE, C. EKICI AND A. GÖRGÜLÜ, Directional q-frame along a space curve, Int. J. Adv. Res. Comp. Sci. Soft. Eng., 5(12)(2015), 1–6.
- [10] J. BLOOMENTHAL, Calculation of Reference Frames Along a Space Curve, Graphics Gems, Academic Press Professional, Inc., San Diego, CA, 1990.



- [11] A. GRAY, *Modern Differential Geometry of Curves and Surfaces with Mathematicia*, Second Edition, CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1998.
- [12] A. MD. SAID, Vector-projection approach to curve framing for extruded surfaces, ICCSA 2013 Lecture Notes in Computer Science, 7971(2013), 596–607.
- [13] B. DIVJAK AND Z. M. SIPUS, Involutes and evolutes in n-dimensional simply isotropic space $\mathbb{I}_n^{(1)}$, J. Inf. Org. Sci., 23(1)(1999), 71–79.
- [14] G. ÖZTÜRK, K. ARSLAN AND B. BULCA, A characterization of involutes and evolutes of a given curve in \mathbb{E}^n , *Kyungpook Math. J.*, **58**(2018), 117–135.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.



MALAYA JOURNAL OF MATEMATIK

Malaya J. Mat. **9(04)**(2021), 251–258. http://doi.org/10.26637/mjm904/009

Nadaraya-Watson estimation of a nonparametric autoregressive model

BEN CÉLESTIN KOUASSI^{*1}, OUAGNINA HILI¹ AND EDOH KATCHEKPELE²

¹ UMRI Mathématiques et Nouvelles Technologies de l'Information, Institut National Polytechnique Felix Houphouet-Boigny, BP 1093 Yamoussoukro, Cote d'Ivoire.

² Département de Mathématiques, Faculté des Sciences et Techniques, Université de Kara, Kara, TOGO.

Received 29 July 2021; Accepted 27 September 2021

Abstract. We investigate the asymptotic behavior of the Nadaraya-Watson (NW) estimator of the regression function of a τ -mixing process. We prove the strong consistency and the asymptotic normality of this estimator and we illustrate these two properties using simulated data.

AMS Subject Classifications: 62E20, 62G05, 62G08, 62G20.

Keywords: Nonparametric autoregression, Nonparametric estimation, Asymptotic normality, Nadaraya-Watson estimator, τ -mixing.

Contents

1	Introduction	251
2	Notations and Assumptions	252
3	Main Results	253
4	Simulation study	255
	4.1 Simulation of strong consistency of $\hat{f}_T(0)$	255
	4.2 Simulation of asymptotic normality of $\hat{f}_T(0)$	256

1. Introduction

From the seminal works by Rosenblatt [20], nonparametric function estimation has been widely investigated. Parzen [19] proposed a family of kernels for nonparametric density function estimation. He obtained the same result as Rosenblatt [20]. These different works allowed Nadaraya [17] and Watson [22] to independently propose a nonparametric estimator of the regression function. This is the Nadaraya-Watson (NW) estimator. Theoretical and practical aspects of this estimator have been studied. Interesting properties have been obtained. For an overview on the question, we refer to Bercu et al. [2], Li et al. [15] and the references therein. The NW estimation method was initially restricted to independent and identically distributed data (see, for example, [16, 18, 21] and the references therein). Then, it has been adapted by several studies to the α -, β - and ϕ -mixing processes (see, for example, [5, 7, 12] and the references therein). There are very few studies suitable for τ -mixing processes. This paper presents itself as one of the few contributions on the estimation of the regression function of τ -mixing process.

More recently, Hong and Linton [13] proposed an infinite dimensional NW type estimator for the regression

^{*}Corresponding author. Email addresses: kouassiben5@gmail.com (Kouassi), o_hili@yahoo.fr (Hili), edohkatchekpele@gmail.com (Katchekpele)

Ben Célestin KOUASSI, Ouagnina HILI and Edoh KATCHEKPELE²

function of an α -dependent process. In our paper, we use a NW estimator, as Hong and Linton [13], to estimate the regression function of a p-Markov process. These processes are generally β -dependant. However, there are some that are neither α -dependent nor β -dependent (but τ -dependent) (see [1]). Among these, we can mention some nonparametric autoregressive (NAR) processes. According to Fan and Yao [10] (p. 19), a sequence $(X_t)_{t\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is a NAR process if it is a solution of (2.1). In our study, we show the strong consistency and the asymptotic normality of the NW estimator of the regression function of NAR process under the assumption of a τ -mixing condition on the sample. Our results go further than those of Hong and Linton ([13], Theorem 1) since we get the strong consistency.

The remainder of this paper is organized as follows. Section 2 discusses the model and the assumptions. Section 3 contains the main results and their proof. Section 4 is devoted to a small simulation.

2. Notations and Assumptions

In this paper, we shall use the following notations : $||z|| := \sup_{1 \le i \le p} |z_i|$, for any $z = (z_1, z_2, \dots, z_p)' \in \mathbb{R}^p$ where

Z' denotes the transpose of Z. For any $v \in \mathbb{R}$, [v] denotes the largest integer close to v; Let $(X_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}}$ be a stochastic process satisfying :

$$X_t = f(Y_t) + \xi_t, \ t \in \mathbb{Z}; \tag{2.1}$$

where $X_t \in \mathbb{R}$, $Y_t = (X_{t-1}, X_{t-2}, ..., X_{t-p})' \in \mathbb{R}^p$, $(\xi_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}}$ is a sequence of independent identically distributed random variables with $\mathbb{E}(\xi_t) = 0$ and $\sigma^2(\xi_t) > 0$, $t \in \mathbb{Z}$. The random variable ξ_t is independent of X_i , for i < tand $f(.) : \mathbb{R}^p \to \mathbb{R}$, $z \mapsto \mathbb{E}(X_t | Y_t = z)$, $t \in \mathbb{Z}$, is an unknown measurable function. Let $x \in \mathbb{R}^p$, we observe $(X_1, Y_1), ..., (X_T, Y_T)$ and estimate f(x) by :

$$\hat{f}_{T}(x) = \begin{cases} \sum_{t=1}^{T} K_{t}(x) X_{t} \\ \sum_{t=1}^{T} K_{t}(x) \\ 0, & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}; \text{ if } \sum_{t=1}^{T} K_{t}(x) \neq 0$$
(2.2)

where $K_t(x) = K\left(\left\|h_T^{-1}(x - Y_t)\right\|\right), t = 1, ..., T; K(.)$ denotes the kernel function and $h_T > 0$.

Our goal is to establish the consistency and the asymptotic normality of $\hat{f}_T(x)$. Zhu and Politis [23] have done this for nonparametric functional autoregression models. Hong and Linton [13] also proved it for α -dependent processes.

The assumptions needed for the theoretical results are stated below.

 (A_1) : There exists an Orlicz function $\Phi(.)$ such that :

$$\Phi(uv) \leq \Phi(u)\Phi(v)$$
, for all $u, v \in \mathbb{R}_+$;

and for all $y, z \in \mathbb{R}^p$,

$$|f(y) - f(z)| \leq \sum_{j=1}^{p} \varpi_j |y_j - z_j|,$$

where $(\varpi_j)_{1 \leq j \leq p}$ is a sequence of nonnegative real numbers such that $\varpi = \sum_{j=1}^{r} \varpi_j < 1$, $|f(0,0,...,0)| + ||\xi_1||_{\Phi} < \infty$ and $||.||_{\Phi}$ denotes the Orlicz norm associated with $\Phi(.)$ (see [9] for the definition of the Orlicz norm).



Nadaraya-Watson estimation of a nonparametric autoregressive model

- (A_2) : The kernel $K : [0, +\infty[\longrightarrow [0, +\infty[$ is bounded and has compact support, that is, there exists $\lambda > 0$ such that K(v) = 0 for all $v > \lambda$. There exists two real constants $0 < C_1 < C_2 < \infty$ such that $C_1 \leq K(v) \leq C_2, v \in [0, \lambda]$ and $\int_{\mathbb{R}} K(v) dv = 1$.
- (A_3) : For t = 1, ..., T, $\varphi_x(\lambda h_T) := \mathbb{P}(\|h_T^{-1}(Y_t x)\| \leq \lambda) > 0$ (λ is defined in Assumption (A_2)) and $h_T \longrightarrow 0$ as $T \longrightarrow \infty$.

From Assumption (A_1) , Doukhan and Wintenberger [9] show the existence of a strongly stationary and τ -dependent solution of (2.1) such that $\tau(i) = O(a^i)$, 0 < a < 1 (see Corollary 3.1 of [9]). According to Remark 3.1 of Doukhan and Wintenberger [9], this solution is an ergodic process. So $(Y_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}}$ and $(X_t, Y_t)_{t \in \mathbb{Z}}$ are strongly stationary and ergodic processes (see Theorem 36.4 of [3]). Assumption (A_1) also reflects the continuity of the application f(.). Assumption (A_2) was borrowed from Hong and Linton [13] (Assumption B3). Assumption (A_3) expresses the possibility of observing the sample in a neighbourhood of x. This is a classic assumption in the nonparametric framework. It naturally extends the hypothesis of the strictly positive density of the explanatory variable.

3. Main Results

Theorem 3.1. Under Assumptions (A_1) , (A_2) and (A_3) , for T big enough,

$$\widehat{f}_T(x) = f(x) + o(1) \quad almost \ surely \ (a.s.) \tag{3.1}$$

Proof. According to Assumption (A₃); we have, for t = 1, ..., T, $\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{\|x - Y_t\|}{h_T} \leq \lambda\right) > 0$, so $\mathbb{E}\left(K_t(x)\right) > 0$. Let :

$$\widehat{f}_{1,T}(x) = \frac{\frac{1}{T} \sum_{t=1}^{T} K_t(x) X_t}{\mathbb{E}(K_1(x))} \quad \text{and} \quad \widehat{f}_{2,T}(x) = \frac{\frac{1}{T} \sum_{t=1}^{T} K_t(x)}{\mathbb{E}(K_1(x))}.$$
(3.2)

According to Equation (20) of Hong and Linton [13], we can write :

$$\widehat{f}_{T}(x) - f(x) = \frac{\mathbb{E}\left(\widehat{f}_{1,T}(x)\right) - f(x)}{\widehat{f}_{2,T}(x)} + \frac{\widehat{f}_{1,T}(x) - \mathbb{E}\left(\widehat{f}_{1,T}(x)\right)}{\widehat{f}_{2,T}(x)} - \frac{f(x)\left(\widehat{f}_{2,T}(x) - 1\right)}{\widehat{f}_{2,T}(x)}.$$
(3.3)

Let us study the asymptotic behavior of $\hat{f}_T(x) - f(x)$. To do it, we shall study the asymptotic behaviors of $\hat{f}_{2,T}(x)$, $\mathbb{E}\left(\hat{f}_{1,T}(x)\right) - f(x)$ and $\hat{f}_{1,T}(x) - \mathbb{E}\left(\hat{f}_{1,T}(x)\right)$.

We start with the asymptotic behavior of $\hat{f}_{2,T}(x)$.

According to Assumption (A_1) , $(X_t)_{t\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is strongly stationary and ergodic. Since $K_t(x)$ is a measurable transformation of $(X_{t-1}, ..., X_{t-p})'$ and $\mathbb{E}(K_1(x)) < +\infty$ (see Assumption (A_2)), we have by Krengel [14], for T big enough,

$$\frac{1}{T}\sum_{t=1}^{T}K_t(x)\longrightarrow \mathbb{E}(K_1(x)) \ a.s.$$

So, we have for *T* big enough :

$$\hat{f}_{2,T}(x) \longrightarrow 1 \ a.s.$$
 (3.4)

Ben Célestin KOUASSI, Ouagnina HILI and Edoh KATCHEKPELE²

According to Assumptions (A_1) and (A_2) , $|\mathbb{E}(K_1(x)X_1)| < \infty$. And $K_t(x)X_t$ is a measurable transformation of $(X_t, X_{t-1}, ..., X_{t-p})'$. Therefore, we show as in (3.4), for T big enough :

$$\frac{1}{T}\sum_{t=1}^{T}K_t(x)X_t \longrightarrow \mathbb{E}(K_1(x)X_1) \ a.s.$$

Therefore, for *T* big enough :

$$\widehat{f}_{1,T}(x) - \mathbb{E}\left(\widehat{f}_{1,T}(x)\right) \longrightarrow 0 \ a.s.$$
(3.5)

Using the same reasoning as the proof of Equation (53) in Hong and Liton [13] (see also the proof of Lemma 6.2 of [11]), we show, for T big enough :

$$\mathbb{E}\left(\widehat{f}_{1,T}(x)\right) - f(x) \longrightarrow 0.$$
(3.6)

Gathering (3.3), (3.4), (3.5) and (3.6), we get (3.1).

Theorem 3.2. Under Assumptions (A_1) , (A_2) and (A_3) , for T big enough,

$$\varsigma^2 := \lim_{T \to \infty} \frac{1}{T} Var\left(\sum_{t=1}^T X_t\right) < +\infty.$$
(3.7)

And

$$\sqrt{T}\mathbb{E}(K_1(x))\left(\widehat{f}_T(x) - f(x) + o(1)\right) + o\left(\sqrt{\ln\ln(T)}\right) \stackrel{d}{\longrightarrow} N(0,\varsigma^2),\tag{3.8}$$

where $\stackrel{d}{\longrightarrow}$ denotes convergence in distribution.

Proof. According to (3.3), (3.4) and (3.6), we have *a.s.*, for *T* big enough :

$$\widehat{f}_{T}(x) - f(x) = \widehat{f}_{1,T}(x) - \mathbb{E}\left(\widehat{f}_{1,T}(x)\right) + o(1)
= \frac{1}{T\mathbb{E}(K_{1}(x))} \sum_{t=1}^{T} \left(K_{t}(x)X_{t} - \mathbb{E}(K_{1}(x)X_{1})\right) + o(1)
= \frac{1}{T\mathbb{E}(K_{1}(x))} \sum_{t=1}^{T} \left\{(K_{t}(x) - 1)X_{t} - \mathbb{E}\left((K_{1}(x) - 1)X_{1}\right)\right\}
+ \frac{1}{T\mathbb{E}(K_{1}(x))} \sum_{t=1}^{T} \left(X_{t} - \mathbb{E}(X_{1})\right) + o(1).$$
(3.9)

Since $(K_t(x) - 1)X_t$ is a measurable transformation of $(X_t, X_{t-1}, ..., X_{t-p})'$, so we have, for T big enough :

$$\frac{1}{T}\sum_{t=1}^{T}\left\{ (K_t(x)-1)X_t - \mathbb{E}\left((K_1(x)-1)X_1 \right) \right\} \longrightarrow 0 \ a.s.$$

we have a.s., for T big enough :

$$\widehat{f}_T(x) - f(x) = \frac{1}{T\mathbb{E}(K_1(x))} \sum_{t=1}^T \left(X_t - \mathbb{E}(X_1) \right) + o(1).$$
(3.10)



Nadaraya-Watson estimation of a nonparametric autoregressive model

The function $s \mapsto |s|^2 \ln(1+|s|)$ is measurable. So $(|X_t - \mathbb{E}(X_1)|^2 \ln(1+|X_t - \mathbb{E}(X_1)|))_t$ is stationary because $(X_t)_t$ is strongly stationary and ergodic. Therefore $\mathbb{E}(|X_t - \mathbb{E}(X_1)|^2 \ln(1+|X_t - \mathbb{E}(X_1)|)) < \infty$. According to the Hypothesis (A_1) , the mixing coefficient $\tau(.)$ of the process $(X_t)_{t\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is such that $\tau(i) = O(a^i)$, 0 < a < 1.

From item 3 of Corollary 2 of Dedecker and Prieur [6], we have (3.7) and there exists a sequence $(Z_t)_{1 \le t \le T}$ of independent $N(0;\varsigma^2)$ -distributed random variables such that :

$$\sum_{t=1}^{T} \left(X_t - \mathbb{E}(X_1) \right) = \sum_{t=1}^{T} Z_t + o\left(\sqrt{T \ln \ln(T)}\right) a.s.;$$
(3.11)

where ς^2 is defined in (3.7).

According to (3.10) and (3.11), we have, for T big enough :

$$\sqrt{T}\mathbb{E}(K_1(x))\left(\widehat{f}_T(x) - f(x) + o(1)\right) + o\left(\sqrt{\ln\ln(T)}\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}}\sum_{t=1}^T Z_t \ a.s.$$
(3.12)

From the Central Limit Theorem, we have for *T* big enough :

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} \sum_{t=1}^{T} Z_t \xrightarrow{d} N(0,\varsigma^2).$$

Back to (3.12), we get (3.8).

4. Simulation study

In this section we present some results of our simulation study. We first (Section 4.1) focus on the strong consistency of estimator of regression function defined in (2.2). And we verify numerically the asymptotic normality of this estimator in Section 4.2. The simulation study was performed using R software and the results presented in these simulations correspond to 200 replications. Here, the Orlicz space is $L^1(\mathbb{R})$ and we use the absolute value function as Orlicz function.

Let f be the function from $\mathbb R$ to $\mathbb R$ defined by :

$$f: x \longmapsto 0.2x. \tag{4.1}$$

We consider :

$$X_t = f(X_{t-1}) + \xi_t, \ t = 1, \dots, T;$$
(4.2)

where $X_0 = 0$ and $(\xi_t)_t$ is a sequence of independent identically uniformly distributed on [-0.3, 0.3].

We choose the uniform kernel on [0, 1]; for the bandwidth, we choose $h_T = T^{-1/6}$. We numerically verify (3.1) and (3.8) at point 0.

4.1. Simulation of strong consistency of $\hat{f}_T(0)$

The samples are taken with size which varies between 100 and 500 observations. Table 4.1 reports the root mean square error (RMSE). The RMSE is calculated from the following formula :

$$RMSE = \sqrt{\frac{1}{r} \sum_{i=1}^{r} (\hat{f}_{T,r}(0) - f(0))^2},$$



Ben Célestin KOUASSI, Ouagnina HILI and Edoh KATCHEKPELE²

where r denotes the number of replications (here r = 200) and $\hat{f}_{T,r}(0)$, the value of $\hat{f}_T(0)$ at the r^{th} replication (see (2.2) for the definition of $\hat{f}_T(0)$).

As it can be seen in Table 4.1, the RMSE decreases when the sample size increases. This corroborates the convergence of estimator.

T	RMSE
100	0.018896
200	0.011016
500	0.007764

Table 4.1 : *RMSE values*

4.2. Simulation of asymptotic normality of $\hat{f}_T(0)$

The purpose of this subsection is to illustrate the asymptotic normality of estimator $\hat{f}_T(0)$ (see (3.8)). To this purpose, we randomly generate samples of size $T \in \{100, 300, 500\}$ of $\hat{f}_T(0)$. Figure 4.1 shows the histogram and the Q - Q plot of the estimator $\hat{f}_{500}(0)$. In addition to these graphical representations, we performed a Shapiro-Wilk normality test. The results of the test are presented in Table 4.2 where W refers to the test statistic.



Figure 4.1 : Graphical illustration of the normality of $\hat{f}_{500}(0)$.

Figure 4.1 is composed of two sub-figures: an histogram (on the left) and a Q - Q plot (on the right). On the left side of Figure 4.1, we have plotted the histogram of $\hat{f}_{500}(0)$ (orange colour). The shape of the histogram reminds us of the graphical representation of the density of normal distribution. This presumption is accentuated with the quantile cloud of dots. On the right side of Figure 4.1, we have plotted Q - Q plot in red and Henry's line in blue. Most of the points seem to line up with Henry's line. And the extremities of the cloud seem to move away from it. Figure 4.1 therefore shows a presumption of normality of the sample. To confirm the normality of sample, we have performed the Shapiro-Wilk test. The test results show high values of p - value. This value increases when the sample size increases. In view of results, we can confirm the normality of these samples .



Nadaraya-Watson estimation of a nonparametric autoregressive model

T	W	p-value
100	0.98869	0.5604
300	0.98961	0.6334
500	0.99248	0.8547

Table 4.2 : Shapiro-Wilk normality test on $\hat{f}_T(0), T \in \{100, 300, 500\}$.

References

- [1] D.W.K. ANDREWS, Nonstrong mixing autoregressive processes, *Journal of Applied Probability*, **21(4)**(1984), 930–934.
- [2] B. BERCU, T. M. N. NGUYEN AND J. SARACCO, On the asymptotic behaviour of the Nadaraya-Watson estimator associated with the recursive sliced inverse regression method, A *journal of Theoretical and Applied Statistics*, 49(3)(2015), 660–679.
- [3] P. BILLINGSLEY, Probability and Measure : Third Edition, WILEY SERIES IN PROBABILITY AND MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS, 1995.
- [4] Z. CAI, Weighted Nadaraya–Watson regression estimation. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 51(3)(2001), 307–318.
- [5] G. COLLOMB AND W. HARDLE, Strong uniform convergence rates in robust nonparametric time series analysis and prediction: kernel regression estimation from dependent observations. *Stochastic Processes and their Applications*, **23**(1)(1986), 77–89.
- [6] J. DEDECKER AND C. PRIEUR, Coupling for τ -Dependent Sequences and Applications. Journal of Theoretical Probability, 17(4)(2004), 861–885.
- [7] H. DETTE, J. C. PARDO-FERNÁNDEZ AND I. VAN KEILEGOM, Goodness-of-Fit Tests for Multiplicative Models with Dependent Data. Scandinavian Journal of Statistics, 36(4) (2009), 782—799.
- [8] L. P. DEVROYE, The uniform convergence of the Nadaraya-Watson regression function estimate. *The Canadian Journal of Statistics*. 6(2) (1978), 179–191.
- [9] P. DOUKHAN AND O. WINTENBERGER, Weakly dependent chains with infinite memory. *Stochastic Processes and their Applications*, **118(11)**(2008), 1997–2013.
- [10] J. FAN AND Q. YAO, Nonlinear Time Series : Nonparametric and Parametric Methods, Springer-Verlag New York, Inc., 2003.
- [11] F. FERRATY AND P. VIEU, Nonparametric Functional Data Analysis: Theory and Practice, Springer, 2006.
- [12] L. GYÖRFI, W. HÄRDLE, P. SARDA AND VIEU, Nonparametric Curve Estimation From Time Series, *Springer-Verlag New York*, **60**(1) 1989.
- [13] S. Y. HONG AND O. LINTON, Nonparametric estimation of infinite order regression and its application to the risk-return tradeoff. *Journal of Econometrics*, **219(2)** (2020), 389–424.
- [14] U. KRENGEL, Ergodic Theorems, De Gruyter, Berlin, 1985.
- [15] P. LI, X. LI AND L. CHEN, The asymptotic normality of internal estimator for nonparametric regression, *Journal of Inequalities and Applications* 2018, 231.



Ben Célestin KOUASSI, Ouagnina HILI and Edoh KATCHEKPELE²

- [16] Y. P. MACK AND B. W. SILVERMAN, Weak and strong uniform consistency of kernel regression estimates, *Zeitschrift für Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie und verwandte Gebiete* **61(3)** (1982), 405–415.
- [17] E. A. NADARAYA, On estimating Regression. *Theory of Probability and its Applications*, **9(1)** (1964), 141–142.
- [18] K. NODA, Estimation of a regression function by the Parzen kernel-type density estimators. *Annals of the Institute of Statistical Mathematics* **28(1)** (1976), 221–234.
- [19] E. PARZEN, On estimation of a probability density function and mode. Annals of Mathematical Statistics 33(3) (1962), 1065–1076.
- [20] M. ROSENBLATT, Remarks on some non-parametric estimates of a density function. Annals of Mathematical Statistics, 27(3) (1956), 832–837.
- [21] E. F. SCHUSTER, Joint asymptotic distribution of the estimated regression function at a finite number of distinct points, *Annals of Mathematical Statistics* **43(1)** (1972), 84–88.
- [22] G. S. WATSON, Smooth Regression Analysis. Sankhya Series A 26 (1964) 359–372.
- [23] T. ZHU AND D. N. POLITIS, Kernel estimates of nonparametric functional autoregression models and their bootstrap approximation, *Electronic Journal of Statistics* 11 (2) (2017), 2876-2906.



This is an open access article distributed under the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

